# UNITED STATES SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549

#### **FORM 10-Q**

**■ QUARTERLY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE** ACT OF 1934

For quarterly period ended: June 30, 2017

OR

☐ TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the transition period from

to

**Commission File Number: 1-4221** 

#### **HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Delaware

(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

73-0679879

(I.R.S. Employer I.D. Number)

1437 South Boulder Avenue, Tulsa, Oklahoma, 74119

(Address of principal executive office)(Zip Code)

(918) 742-5531

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

N/A

(Former name, former address and former fiscal year, if changed since last report)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  $\blacksquare$  No  $\square$ 

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§ 232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes 🗵 No 🗆

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, smaller reporting company, or an emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company," and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer   ✓	Accelerated filer □				
Non-accelerated filer □	Smaller reporting company □				
(Do not check if a smaller reporting company)	Emerging growth company □				
If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. □					
Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (a	as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes □ No 🗷				
CLASS	OUTSTANDING AT July 31, 2017				
Common Stock, \$0.10 par value	108,581,547				

#### HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES

#### TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page No.
PART I.	FINANCIAL INFORMATION	
Item 1.	<u>Financial Statements</u>	
	Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016	3
	Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations for the Three and Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016	4
	Consolidated Condensed Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the Three and Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016	5
	Consolidated Condensed Statements of Cash Flows for the Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016	6
	Consolidated Condensed Statement of Shareholders' Equity for the Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017	7
	Notes to Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements	8-36
Item 2.	Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations	37-47
Item 3.	Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk	47-48
Item 4.	Controls and Procedures	48
PART II.	OTHER INFORMATION	48
Item 1.	<u>Legal Proceedings</u>	48
Item 1A.	Risk Factors	48-50
Item 6.	<u>Exhibits</u>	51
Signatures		52
	2	

#### PART I. FINANCIAL INFORMATION HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED BALANCE SHEETS

(Unaudited)

(in thousands, except share and per share amounts)

#### ITEM 1. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

		June 30, 2017	Sej	ptember 30, 2016
Assets				
CURRENT ASSETS:				
Cash and cash equivalents	\$	572,787	\$	905,561
Short-term investments		39,894		44,148
Accounts receivable, less reserve of \$6,352 in June 30, 2017 and \$2,696 in September 30, 2016		440,872		375,169
Inventories		138,403		124,325
Prepaid expenses and other		58,425		78,067
Assets held for sale		_		45,352
Current assets of discontinued operations		7		64
Total current assets		1,250,388		1,572,686
NONCURRENT ASSETS:				
Investments		76,986		84,955
Property, plant and equipment, at cost:		5,062,914		5,144,733
Goodwill		51,967		4,718
Intangible assets, net of amortization		51,569		919
Other assets		20,067		24,008
Total noncurrent assets		5,263,503		5,259,333
TOTAL ASSETS	\$	6,513,891	\$	6,832,019
10 INELIBER	4	0,010,051	-	0,002,019
Liabilities and Shareholders' Equity				
CURRENT LIABILITIES:				
Accounts payable	\$	137,206	\$	95,422
Accrued liabilities	Ψ	196,643	Ψ	234,639
Current liabilities of discontinued operations		80		59
Total current liabilities		333,929		330,120
NONCURRENT LIABILITIES:	_	333,727		330,120
Long-term debt less unamortized discount and debt issuance costs		492,637		491,847
Deferred income taxes		1,325,250		1,342,456
Other		1,323,230		1,342,430
Noncurrent liabilities of discontinued operations				
•	_	3,225	_	3,890
Total noncurrent liabilities	_	1,930,058	_	1,940,974
SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY:				
Common stock, \$.10 par value, 160,000,000 shares authorized, 111,897,106 shares and 111,400,339 shares issued as				
of June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016 respectively and 108,581,547 shares and 108,077,916 shares outstanding as				
of June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016 respectively		11,190		11,140
Preferred stock, no par value, 1,000,000 shares authorized, no shares issued				_
Additional paid-in capital		478,231		448,452
Retained earnings		3,954,705		4,289,807
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)		(4,101)		(204)
		4,440,025		4,749,195
Treasury stock, at cost		(190,121)		(188,270)
Total shareholders' equity		4,249,904		4,560,925
TOTAL LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY	\$	6,513,891	\$	6,832,019

#### HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (Unaudited)

(in thousands, except per share data)

	Three Mon	nths Ended	Nine Mon June	ths Ended
	2017	2016	2017	2016
0				
Operating revenues Drilling - U.S. Land	\$ 405,516	\$ 285,028	\$1,000,119	\$1,004,116
Drilling - O.S. Land Drilling - Offshore	33,711	30,492	103,758	106,697
Drilling - Offshore  Drilling - International Land	55,075	47,983	157,863	171,529
Other	4,262	2,983	10,697	10,182
Oulei	498,564	366,486	1,272,437	1,292,524
Operating costs and expenses	490,304	300,480	1,272,437	1,292,324
Operating costs, excluding depreciation	337,463	186,146	881,971	684,401
Depreciation	145,043	138,690	431,667	422,336
Asset impairment charge	143,043	6,250	431,007	6,250
Research and development	3.058	2,707	8,585	7,941
General and administrative	42,890	46,496	110,671	112,381
Income from asset sales	(1,862)	(547)	(17,593)	(7,820)
monto non abbet sales	526,592	379,742	1,415,301	1,225,489
Operating income (loss) from continuing operations	(28,028)	(13,256)	(142,864)	67,035
Other income (expense)	(-0,0-0)	(,)	(,)	0,,000
Interest and dividend income	1,700	778	4,028	2,310
Interest expense	(6,364)	(6,407)	(17,503)	(16,652)
Other	(911)	534	(350)	926
	(5,575)	(5,095)	(13,825)	(13,416)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	(33,603)	(18,351)	(156,689)	53,619
Income tax provision	(10,478)	2,842	(50,537)	33,740
Income (loss) from continuing operations	(23,125)	(21,193)	(106,152)	19,879
Income (loss) from discontinued operations before income taxes	3,223	2,193	2,705	2,241
Income tax provision	1,897	2,200	2,233	6,113
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	1,326	(7)	472	(3,872)
NET INCOME (LOSS)	\$ (21,799)	\$ (21,200)	\$ (105,680)	\$ 16,007
Basic earnings per common share:				
Income (loss) from continuing operations	\$ (0.22)	\$ (0.20)	\$ (0.99)	\$ 0.18
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	\$ 0.01	\$ —	<u>\$</u>	\$ (0.04)
Net income (loss)	\$ (0.21)	\$ (0.20)	\$ (0.99)	\$ 0.14
Diluted earnings per common share:				
Income (loss) from continuing operations	\$ (0.22)	\$ (0.20)	\$ (0.99)	\$ 0.17
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	\$ 0.01	\$	\$ _	\$ (0.04)
Net income (loss)	\$ (0.21)	\$ (0.20)	\$ (0.99)	\$ 0.13
Weighted average shares outstanding (in thousands):				
Basic	108,572	108,047	108,470	107,970
Diluted	108,572	108,047	108,470	108,523
Dividends declared per common share	\$ 0.7000	\$ 0.7000	\$ 2.1000	\$ 2.0750

# HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)

(Unaudited) (in thousands, except per share data)

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Nine Mon June	
	2017	2016	2017	2016
Net income (loss)	\$ (21,799)	\$ (21,200)	\$ (105,680)	\$ 16,007
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of income taxes:				
Unrealized appreciation (depreciation) on securities, net of income taxes of (\$4.4)				
million and (\$3.2) million at June 30, 2017, and \$6.1 million and (\$1.7) million at June 30, 2016	(6,899)	9,744	(4,994)	(2,719)
Minimum pension liability adjustments, net of income taxes of \$0.2 million and \$0.6 million at June 30, 2017, and \$0.1 million and \$0.5 million at June 30, 2016	365	314	1,097	940
Other comprehensive income (loss)	(6,534)	10,058	(3,897)	(1,779)
Comprehensive income (loss)	\$ (28,333)	\$ (11,142)	\$ (109,577)	\$ 14,228

# HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (Unaudited) (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30,			inded
	_	2017		2016
ODED ATING A CTIVITIES.				
OPERATING ACTIVITIES:	¢.	(105 (90)	¢.	16.007
Net income (loss)	\$	(105,680)	\$	16,007
Adjustment for (income) loss from discontinued operations	_	(472)	_	3,872
Income (loss) from continuing operations		(106,152)		19,879
Adjustments to reconcile net income (loss) to net cash provided by operating activities:		421 667		400.006
Depreciation		431,667		422,336
Asset impairment charge Amortization of debt discount and debt issuance costs		700		6,250
		789		879
Provision (recovery) for bad debt		3,858		(3,067)
Stock-based compensation Pension settlement charge		19,247 1.411		19,661 3,343
Income from asset sales		,		
Deferred income tax expense		(17,593) (27,798)		(7,820) 77,886
Other		(27,798)		255
Change in assets and liabilities:		62		233
Accounts receivable		(62,942)		97,698
Inventories		(11,806)		(344)
Prepaid expenses and other		26.820		(6,537)
Accounts payable		41,398		(13,643)
Accounts payable Accrued liabilities		(53,456)		14,632
Deferred income taxes		(1,051)		2,673
Other noncurrent liabilities		(8,205)		(18,741)
Net cash provided by operating activities from continuing operations	_	236,249		615,340
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities from discontinued operations		(115)		70
Net cash provided by operating activities  Net cash provided by operating activities	_	236,134		615,410
	_	230,134	_	013,410
INVESTING ACTIVITIES:		(200.275)		(210.540)
Capital expenditures Purchase of short-term investments		(300,275)		(219,549)
Purchase of short-term investments  Payment for acquisition of business, net of cash acquired		(48,958)		(36,958)
Proceeds from sale of short-term investments		(70,416) 53,150		32,681
Proceeds from asset sales		17,921		12,804
	_			
Net cash used in investing activities	_	(348,578)		(211,022)
FINANCING ACTIVITIES:				(22)
Debt issuance costs		(220, 0(1)		(32)
Dividends paid		(229,061)		(224,040)
Exercise of stock options, net of tax withholding		10,458		483
Tax withholdings related to net share settlements of restricted stock		(5,848)		(3,912)
Excess tax benefit from stock-based compensation	_	4,121		761
Net cash used in financing activities	_	(220,330)		(226,740)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents		(332,774)		177,648
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period	_	905,561	_	729,384
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	\$	572,787	\$	907,032

#### HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENT OF SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY NINE MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017

#### (Unaudited)

(in thousands, except per share amounts)

	Comm Shares	on Stock Amount	Additional Paid-In Capital	Retained Earnings	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Loss	Trea Shares	sury Stock Amount	Total
Balance, September 30, 2016	111,400	\$ 11,140	\$ 448,452	\$ 4,289,807	\$ (204)	3,322	\$ (188,270)	\$ 4,560,925
Comprehensive loss:								
Net loss				(105,680)				(105,680)
Other comprehensive loss					(3,897)			(3,897)
Dividends declared (\$2.10 per share)				(229,422)				(229,422)
Exercise of stock options	355	36	13,950			51	(3,528)	10,458
Tax benefit of stock-based awards			4,121					4,121
Stock issued for vested restricted stock, net of shares withheld for								
employee taxes	142	14	(7,539)			(57)	1,677	(5,848)
Stock-based compensation			19,247					19,247
Balance, June 30, 2017	111,897	\$ 11,190	\$ 478,231	\$ 3,954,705	\$ (4,101)	3,316	\$ (190,121)	\$ 4,249,904

# HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC. AND SUBSIDIARIES NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (Unaudited)

#### 1. Basis of Presentation

Unless the context otherwise requires, the use of the terms "the Company", "we", "us" and "our" in these Notes to Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements refers to Helmerich & Payne, Inc. and its consolidated subsidiaries.

The accompanying unaudited Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States ("GAAP") and applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Commission") pertaining to interim financial information. Accordingly, these interim financial statements do not include all information or footnote disclosures required by GAAP for complete financial statements and, therefore, should be read in conjunction with the Consolidated Financial Statements and notes thereto in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K and other current filings with the Commission. In the opinion of management all adjustments, consisting of those of a normal recurring nature, necessary to present fairly the results of the periods presented have been included. The results of operations for the interim periods presented may not necessarily be indicative of the results to be expected for the full year.

In January 2017, the Financial Accounting Standards Board ("FASB") issued Accounting Standards Update ("ASU") 2017-04, *Intangibles-Goodwill and Other (Topic 350)*. The objective of this ASU is to simplify how an entity is required to test goodwill for impairment by eliminating Step 2 from the goodwill impairment test. Step 2 measures a goodwill impairment loss by comparing the implied fair value of a reporting unit's goodwill with the carrying amount of that goodwill. Instead, under this ASU, an entity should perform its annual, or interim, goodwill impairment test by comparing the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount. An entity should recognize an impairment charge for the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value; however, the loss recognized should not exceed the total amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. Additionally, an entity should consider income tax effects from any tax deductible goodwill on the carrying amount of the reporting unit when measuring the goodwill impairment loss, if applicable. The ASU is applicable for public entities for their annual or any interim goodwill impairment tests in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019. The amendments should be applied on a prospective basis. Early adoption is permitted for interim or annual goodwill impairment tests performed on testing dates after January 1, 2017. We early adopted this guidance effective June 30, 2017 with no impact on our consolidated financial statements. Goodwill will be evaluated for impairment each year in our fourth fiscal quarter.

As more fully described in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K, our contract drilling revenues are comprised of daywork drilling contracts for which the related revenues and expenses are recognized as services are performed. For contracts that are terminated by customers prior to the expirations of their fixed terms, contractual provisions customarily require early termination amounts to be paid to us. Revenues from early terminated contracts are recognized when all contractual requirements have been met. During the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017, early termination revenue was approximately \$5.1 million and \$24.8 million, respectively. We had \$80.7 million and \$189.2 million of early termination revenue for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2016.

Depreciation in the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations includes abandonments of \$7.7 million and \$27.2 million for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017 and \$0.9 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2016. During fiscal 2017, upgrades to our rig fleet to meet customer demands for additional capabilities resulted in the abandonment of older rig components.

During the second quarter of fiscal 2017, we determined rig equipment in our U.S. Land segment previously classified as held for sale no longer met the criteria for held for sale and was reclassified to property, plant and equipment. The equipment is from rigs that were decommissioned from service in prior fiscal years and is recorded at its carrying value which is lower than its estimated fair value.

#### Table of Contents

During the third quarter of fiscal 2017, we determined rig equipment in our International Land segment previously classified as held for sale no longer met the criteria for held for sale and was reclassified to property, plant and equipment. The equipment is recorded at its carrying value which is lower than its estimated fair value.

During the second quarter of fiscal 2017, we sold one of our offshore rigs. The gain from the sale is included in Income from asset sales in our Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations.

The functional currency for all our foreign operations is the U.S. dollar. Nonmonetary assets and liabilities are translated at historical rates and monetary assets and liabilities are translated at exchange rates in effect at the end of the period. Income statement accounts are translated at average rates for the period presented. Foreign currency gains and losses from remeasurement of foreign currency financial statements and foreign currency translations into U.S. dollars are included in direct operating costs. Included in direct operating costs are aggregate foreign currency losses of \$1.3 million and \$3.3 million for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017, respectively. For the three and nine months ended June 30, 2016, we had aggregate foreign currency losses of \$1.1 million and \$9.4 million, respectively, primarily due to the sharp devaluation of the Argentine peso in December 2015.

#### 2. Business Combinations

On June 2, 2017, we completed a merger transaction ("MOTIVE Merger") pursuant to which an unaffiliated drilling technology company, MOTIVE Drilling Technologies, Inc., a Delaware corporation ("MOTIVE"), was merged with and into our wholly owned subsidiary Spring Merger Sub, Inc., a Delaware corporation. MOTIVE survived the transaction and is now a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company. At the effective time of the MOTIVE Merger, MOTIVE shareholders received aggregate cash consideration of \$74.3 million, net of customary closing adjustments, and may receive up to an additional \$25.0 million in potential earnout payments based on future performance. Transaction costs related to the MOTIVE Merger incurred during the nine months ended June 30, 2017, were \$2.8 million and are recorded in the Consolidated Statement of Operations within the general and administrative expense line item. We recorded revenue of \$1.1 million and a net loss of \$0.7 million related to the MOTIVE Merger during the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017.

MOTIVE has a proprietary Bit Guidance System that is an algorithm-driven system that considers the total economic consequences of directional drilling decisions and has proven to consistently lower drilling costs through more efficient drilling and increase hydrocarbon production through smoother wellbores and more accurate well placement. Given our strong and longstanding technology and innovation focus, we believe the technology will continue to advance and provide further benefits for the industry.

The MOTIVE Merger is accounted for as a business combination in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 805, Business Combinations, which requires the assets acquired and liabilities assumed to be recorded at their acquisition date fair values. The estimated fair values are based upon preliminary calculations and valuations, and those estimates and assumptions are subject to changes as we obtain additional information for those estimates during the measurement period. The following table summarizes the purchase price and the preliminary allocation of the fair values of assets acquired and liabilities assumed and separately identifiable intangible assets at the acquisition date (in thousands):

Purchase Price	
Consideration given	
Cash consideration	\$ 74,275
Long-term contingent earnout liability (Other noncurrent	
liabilities)	14,509
Total consideration given	\$ 88,784
Allocation of Purchase Price	
Fair value of assets acquired	
Current assets	\$ 4,425
Property, plant and equipment	300
Intangible asset - developed technology (Intangible assets, net	
of amortization)	51,000
Goodwill	47,249
Total assets acquired	\$102,974
Fair value of liabilities assumed	
Current liabilities	\$ 25
Deferred income taxes	14,165
Total liabilities acquired	\$ 14,190
Fair value of total assets and liabilities acquired	\$ 88,784

The fair value of the contingent consideration of \$14.5 million, calculated using a Monte Carlo simulation which evaluates numerous potential earnings and pay out scenarios, is considered a level 3 measurement under the fair value hierarchy. The developed technology is an intangible asset that will be amortized on a straight-line basis over an estimated 15-year life. We expect annual amortization to be approximately \$3.4 million. The goodwill consists largely of the synergies and economies of scale expected from the drilling technology providing more efficient drilling and directional drilling services, the first mover advantage obtained through the acquisition and expected future developments resulting from the assembled workforce. The goodwill is reported in the Other segment and will not be allocated to any other reporting unit. The goodwill is not subject to amortization but will be evaluated at least annually for impairment or more frequently if impairment indicators are present. The developed technology and goodwill are not deductible for income tax purposes. An associated deferred tax liability has been recorded in regards to the developed technology.

The following unaudited pro forma combined financial information is provided for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, as though the MOTIVE Merger had been completed as of October 1, 2015. These pro forma combined results of operations have been prepared by adjusting our historical results to include the historical results of MOTIVE and reflect pro forma adjustments based on available information and certain assumptions that we believe are reasonable, including application of an appropriate income tax to MOTIVE pre-tax loss. Additionally, pro forma earnings for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 were adjusted to exclude \$1.0 million of after-tax transaction costs. The unaudited pro forma combined financial information is provided for illustrative purposes only and is not necessarily indicative of the actual results that would have been achieved by the combined company for

the periods presented or that may be achieved by the combined company in the future. Future results may vary significantly from the results reflected in this pro forma financial information.

		Pro For	rma			
	Nine M	onths En	ded June 30,			
	201	7	2016			
	,	(unaudited) (in thousands)				
Revenues	\$ 1,275	,646	5 1,294,146			
Net loss	\$ (105	,482) 5	(18,292)			

#### 3. Discontinued Operations

Current assets of discontinued operations consist of restricted cash to meet remaining current obligations within the country of Venezuela. Current and noncurrent liabilities consist of municipal and income taxes payable and social obligations due within the country of Venezuela. Expenses incurred for in-country obligations are reported as discontinued operations.

#### 4. Earnings per Share

ASC 260, Earnings per Share, requires companies to treat unvested share-based payment awards that have non-forfeitable rights to dividends or dividend equivalents as a separate class of securities in calculating earnings per share. We have granted and expect to continue to grant to employees restricted stock grants that contain non-forfeitable rights to dividends. Such grants are considered participating securities under ASC 260. As such, we are required to include these grants in the calculation of our basic earnings per share and calculate basic earnings per share using the two-class method. The two-class method of computing earnings per share is an earnings allocation formula that determines earnings per share for each class of common stock and participating security according to dividends declared (or accumulated) and participation rights in undistributed earnings.

Basic earnings per share is computed utilizing the two-class method and is calculated based on the weighted-average number of common shares outstanding during the periods presented.

Diluted earnings per share is computed using the weighted-average number of common and common equivalent shares outstanding during the periods utilizing the two-class method for stock options and nonvested restricted stock.

Under the two-class method of calculating earnings per share, dividends paid and a portion of undistributed net income, but not losses, are allocated to unvested restricted stock grants that receive dividends, which are considered participating securities.

The following table sets forth the computation of basic and diluted earnings per share:

	Three Months Ended June 30,				Nine Months End June 30,		
	2017		2016		2017		2016
	(in thousands, except per share amounts)						
Numerator:							
Income (loss) from continuing operations	\$ (23,12	25)	\$ (21,193)	\$	(106,152)	\$	19,879
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	1,32	26	(7)		472		(3,872)
Net income (loss)	(21,79	99)	(21,200)		(105,680)		16,007
Adjustment for basic earnings per share							
Earnings allocated to unvested shareholders	(4.5	58)	(451)		(1,349)		(1,410)
Numerator for basic earnings per share:							
From continuing operations	(23,58	33)	(21,644)		(107,501)		18,469
From discontinued operations	1,32	26	(7)		472		(3,872)
	(22,25	57)	(21,651)		(107,029)		14,597
Adjustment for diluted earnings per share:							
Effect of reallocating undistributed earnings of unvested							
shareholders	-	_	_		_		_
Numerator for diluted earnings per share:							
From continuing operations	(23,58	33)	(21,644)		(107,501)		18,469
From discontinued operations	1,32	26	(7)		472		(3,872)
	\$ (22,25	57)	\$ (21,651)	\$	(107,029)	\$	14,597
Denominator:							
Denominator for basic earnings per share - weighted-average							
shares	108,57	72	108,047		108,470		107,970
Effect of dilutive shares from stock options and restricted							
stock							553
Denominator for diluted earnings per share - adjusted							
weighted-average shares	108,57	72	108,047		108,470		108,523
Basic earnings per common share:							
Income (loss) from continuing operations	\$ (0.2	22)	\$ (0.20)	\$	(0.99)	\$	0.18
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	0.0	)1					(0.04)
Net income (loss)	\$ (0.2	21)	\$ (0.20)	\$	(0.99)	\$	0.14
Diluted earnings per common share:							
Income (loss) from continuing operations	\$ (0.2	22)	\$ (0.20)	\$	(0.99)	\$	0.17
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	0.0	01					(0.04)
Net income (loss)	\$ (0.2	21)	\$ (0.20)	\$	(0.99)	\$	0.13

We had a net loss for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017. Accordingly, our diluted earnings per share calculation for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017 was equivalent to our basic earnings per share calculation since diluted earnings per share excluded any assumed exercise of equity awards. These were excluded because they were deemed to be anti-dilutive, meaning their inclusion would have reduced the reported net loss per share in the applicable period.

The following shares attributable to outstanding equity awards were excluded from the calculation of diluted earnings per share because their inclusion would have been anti-dilutive:

		onths Ended ne 30,		ths Ended	
	2017	2017 2016		2016	
	,	ands, except e amounts)	(in thousands, except per share amounts)		
Shares excluded from calculation of diluted earnings per share	1,332	3,409	1,034	1,861	
Weighted-average price per share	\$ 70.82	\$ 51.94	\$ 73.84	\$ 63.70	

#### 5. Financial Instruments and Fair Value Measurement

The estimated fair value of our available-for-sale securities, reflected on our Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheets as Investments, is based on market quotes. The following is a summary of available-for-sale securities, which excludes assets held in a Non-qualified Supplemental Savings Plan:

	Cost	Gross Unrealized Gains	Gross Unrealized Losses	Fair Value
		(in tho	usands)	
Equity Securities:				
June 30, 2017	\$ 38,473	\$ 27,067	\$ (2,160)	\$ 63,380
September 30, 2016	\$ 38,473	\$ 33,051	\$ —	\$ 71,524

On an ongoing basis we evaluate the marketable equity securities to determine if any decline in fair value below cost is other-than-temporary. If a decline in fair value below cost is determined to be other-than-temporary, an impairment charge is recorded and a new cost basis established. We review several factors to determine whether a loss is other-thantemporary. These factors include, but are not limited to, (i) the length of time a security is in an unrealized loss position, (ii) the extent to which fair value is less than cost, (iii) the financial condition and near-term prospects of the issuer and (iv) our intent and ability to hold the security for a period of time sufficient to allow for any anticipated recovery in fair value. The cost of securities used in determining realized gains and losses is based on the average cost basis of the security sold. One of our securities, Atwood Oceanics, Inc. ("Atwood"), was in an unrealized loss position for less than 30 days at June 30, 2017. During the quarter, Ensco plc ("Ensco") announced that it entered into a definitive merger agreement under which Ensco will acquire Atwood in an all-stock transaction. The definitive merger agreement was unanimously approved by each company's Board of Directors. Under the terms of the merger agreement, Atwood shareholders will receive 1.60 shares of Ensco for each share of Atwood common stock for a total value of \$10.72 per Atwood share based on Ensco's closing share price of \$6.70 on May 26, 2017. The merger is subject to shareholder approval from both companies (simple majority approval from Ensco shareholders and two-thirds majority approval from Atwood shareholders). The votes for each respective company are currently pending and do not have an announced date. The transaction is reportedly expected to close as early as the third quarter of calendar year 2017. Considering the factors above, including whether and when the security will recover in value and based on our ability and intent to hold these investments until the fair value recovers, impairment was not considered other-than-temporary at June 30, 2017.

The assets held in the Non-qualified Supplemental Savings Plan are carried at fair value which totaled \$13.6 million at June 30, 2017 and \$13.4 million at September 30, 2016. The assets are comprised of mutual funds that are measured using Level 1 inputs.

Short-term investments include securities classified as trading securities. Both realized and unrealized gains and losses on trading securities are included in other income (expense) in the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations. The securities are recorded at fair value.

The majority of cash equivalents are invested in highly liquid money-market mutual funds invested primarily in direct or indirect obligations of the U.S. Government. The carrying amount of cash and cash equivalents approximates fair value due to the short maturity of those investments.

Fair value is defined as the exchange price that would be received to sell an asset or paid to transfer a liability (an exit price) in the principal or most advantageous market for the asset or liability in an orderly transaction between market participants at the measurement date. We use the fair value hierarchy established in ASC 820-10 to measure fair value to prioritize the inputs:

- Level 1 Quoted prices (unadjusted) in active markets for identical assets or liabilities that the reporting entity
  can access at the measurement date.
- Level 2 Observable inputs, other than quoted prices included in Level 1, such as quoted prices for similar
  assets or liabilities in active markets; quoted prices for similar assets and liabilities in markets that are not
  active; or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data.
- Level 3 Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of the assets or liabilities. This includes pricing models, discounted cash flow methodologies and similar techniques that use significant unobservable inputs.

At June 30, 2017, our financial instruments utilizing Level 1 inputs include cash equivalents, equity securities with active markets, money market funds we have elected to classify as restricted assets that are included in other current assets and other assets. Also included is cash denominated in a foreign currency that we have elected to classify as restricted to be used to settle the remaining liabilities of discontinued operations. For these items, quoted current market prices are readily available.

At June 30, 2017, Level 2 inputs include U.S. Agency issued debt securities, municipal bonds and corporate bonds measured using broker quotations that utilize observable market inputs. Also included in level 2 inputs are bank certificate of deposits included in short-term investments or current assets.

Our financial instruments measured using Level 3 inputs consist of potential earnout payments associated with the MOTIVE acquisition during the third quarter of fiscal 2017. The valuation techniques used for determining the fair value of the potential earnout payments are described further in Note 2.

The following table summarizes our assets and liabilities measured at fair value presented in our Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheet as of June 30, 2017:

	Fair Value	(Level 1)	(Level 1) (Level 2)	
		(in thou		
Recurring fair value measurements:				
Short-term investments:				
Certificate of deposit	\$ 4,600	\$ —	\$ 4,600	\$ —
Corporate and municipal debt securities	13,877	_	13,877	_
U.S. government and federal agency securities	21,417	17,419	3,998	
Total short-term investments	39,894	17,419	22,475	_
Cash and cash equivalents	572,787	572,787	_	_
Investments	63,380	63,380	_	_
Other current assets	32,917	32,667	250	_
Other assets	6,690	6,690	_	_
Total assets measured at fair value	\$ 715,668	\$ 692,943	\$ 22,725	\$ —
Liabilities				
Contingent earnout liability	\$ 14,509	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 14,509

The following information presents the supplemental fair value information about long-term fixed-rate debt at June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016:

	June 30 2017	,		mber 30, 2016	
	·	(in millions)			
Carrying value of long-term fixed-rate debt	\$ 492	.6	\$	491.8	
Fair value of long-term fixed-rate debt	\$ 527	.2	\$	529.6	

The fair value for the \$500 million fixed-rate debt was based on broker quotes at June 30, 2017. The notes are classified within Level 2 as they are not actively traded in markets.

#### 6. Shareholders' Equity

The Company has authorization from the Board of Directors for the repurchase of up to four million shares per calendar year. The repurchases may be made using our cash and cash equivalents or other available sources. We had no purchases of common shares in either of the third quarters of fiscal 2017 or fiscal 2016.

Components of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) were as follows:

	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2016
	(in the	housands)
Pre-tax amounts:		
Unrealized appreciation on securities	\$ 24,907	\$ 33,051
Unrealized actuarial loss	(32,387)	(34,112)
	\$ (7,480)	\$ (1,061)
After-tax amounts:		
Unrealized appreciation on securities	\$ 15,905	\$ 20,899
Unrealized actuarial loss	(20,006)	(21,103)
	\$ (4,101)	\$ (204)

The following is a summary of the changes in accumulated other comprehensive income, net of tax, by component for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017:

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017					017
	App (Depr	nrealized preciation reciation) on ilable-for-		Defined		
	sale		n.	Benefit		T-4-1
	Securities			Pension Plan n thousands)		Total
Balance at April 1, 2017	\$	22,804	\$	(20,371)	\$	2,433
Other comprehensive loss before reclassifications		(6,899)		_		(6,899)
Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income				365		365
Net current-period other comprehensive income (loss)		(6,899)		365		(6,534)
Balance June 30, 2017	\$	15,905	\$	(20,006)	\$	(4,101)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017					
	Ap (Depi	nrealized preciation reciation) on illable-for-		Defined		
	s	sale ecurities	Pe	Benefit ension Plan		Total
	(in thousands)					101111
Balance at October 1, 2016	\$	20,899	\$	(21,103)	\$	(204)
Other comprehensive loss before reclassifications		(4,994)		_		(4,994)
Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income		_		1,097		1,097
Net current-period other comprehensive income (loss)		(4,994)		1,097		(3,897)
Balance June 30, 2017	\$	15,905	\$	(20,006)	\$	(4,101)

The following provides detail about accumulated other comprehensive income components which were reclassified to the Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations:

Details About Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) Components	Reclassif Accumula Compre Income Three Mon June 2017	ount fied from ited Other ehensive e (Loss) inths Ended e 30, 2016	Reclassif Accumula Compre Income Nine Mon June 2017	2016	Affected Line Item in the Consolidated Statement of Operations
	(in thousands)		(in the	usands)	
Defined Benefit Pension Items					
Amortization of net actuarial loss	\$ 574	\$ 493	\$ 1,724	\$ 1,479	General and administrative
	(209)	(179)	(627)	(539)	Income tax provision
Total reclassifications for the period	\$ 365	\$ 314	\$ 1,097	\$ 940	Net of tax

#### 7. Cash Dividends

The \$0.70 per share cash dividend declared March 1, 2017, was paid June 1, 2017. On June 7, 2017, a cash dividend of \$0.70 per share was declared for shareholders of record on August 18, 2017, payable September 1, 2017. The dividend payable is included in accounts payable in the Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheets.

#### 8. Stock-Based Compensation

On March 2, 2016, the Helmerich & Payne, Inc. 2016 Omnibus Incentive Plan (the "2016 Plan") was approved by our stockholders. The 2016 Plan, among other things, authorizes the Human Resources Committee of the Board to grant non-qualified stock options and restricted stock awards to selected employees and to non-employee Directors. Restricted stock may be granted for no consideration other than prior and future services. The purchase price per share for stock options may not be less than market price of the underlying stock on the date of grant. Stock options expire 10 years after the grant date. Awards outstanding in the Helmerich & Payne, Inc. 2005 Long-Term Incentive Plan (the "2005 Plan") and the Helmerich & Payne, Inc. 2010 Long-Term Incentive Plan (the "2010 Plan") remain subject to the terms and conditions of those plans. As of June 30, 2017, there were 396,007 non-qualified stock options and 292,112 shares of restricted stock awards granted under the 2016 Plan.

A summary of compensation cost for stock-based payment arrangements recognized in general and administrative expense is as follows:

		Three Months Ended June 30,		nths Ended e 30,
	2017	2016	2017	2016
	(in tho	(in thousands)		usands)
Compensation expense				
Stock options	\$ 1,934	\$ 1,722	\$ 5,455	\$ 7,048
Restricted stock	4,834	3,952	13,792	12,613
	\$ 6,768	\$ 5,674	\$ 19,247	\$ 19,661

#### STOCK OPTIONS

The following summarizes the weighted-average assumptions utilized in determining the fair value of options granted during the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016:

	2017	2016
Risk-free interest rate	2.0 %	1.8 %
Expected stock volatility	38.9 %	37.6 %
Dividend yield	3.7 %	4.6 %
Expected term (in years)	5.5	5.5

Risk-Free Interest Rate. The risk-free interest rate is based on U.S. Treasury securities for the expected term of the option.

Expected Volatility Rate. Expected volatility is based upon historical experience of the daily closing price of our stock over a period which approximates the expected term of the option.

Expected Dividend Yield. The expected dividend yield is based on our current dividend yield.

Expected Term. The expected term of the options granted represents the period of time that they are expected to be outstanding. We estimate the expected term of options granted based on historical experience with grants and exercises.

A summary of stock option activity under all existing long-term incentive plans for the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017 is presented in the following tables:

	Thr	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017								
	Shares (in	Weighted Average Exercise		Average		Average		Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term	In	gregate trinsic Value
	thousands)		Price	(in years)	(in	millions)				
Outstanding at April 1, 2017	3,293	\$	55.90							
Granted	62		53.11	_		_				
Exercised	(15)		35.11	_		_				
Forfeited/Expired	_		_	_	\$	_				
Outstanding at June 30, 2017	3,340	\$	55.93	5.8	\$	19.7				
Vested and expected to vest at June 30, 2017	3,286	\$	55.71	5.7	\$	19.7				
Exercisable at June 30, 2017	2,229	\$	50.31	4.4	\$	19.6				

		Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017			
	Shares (in	1	Weighted Average Exercise		
	thousands)		Price		
Outstanding at October 1, 2016	3,312	\$	51.74		
Granted	396		76.61		
Exercised	(355)		39.38		
Forfeited/Expired	(13)		70.37		
Outstanding at June 30, 2017	3,340	\$	55.93		

The weighted-average fair value of options granted in the first, second and third quarters of fiscal 2017 was \$22.42, \$17.55 and \$10.81, respectively.

The total intrinsic value of options exercised during the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017 was \$0.3 million and \$12.0 million, respectively.

As of June 30, 2017, the unrecognized compensation cost related to stock options was \$8.6 million which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.4 years.

#### RESTRICTED STOCK

Restricted stock awards consist of our common stock and are time-vested over three to six years. We recognize compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the vesting period. The fair value of restricted stock awards under the 2016 Plan is determined based on the closing price of our shares on the grant date. As of June 30, 2017, there was \$26.3 million of total unrecognized compensation cost related to unvested restricted stock awards which is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.5 years.

A summary of the status of our restricted stock awards as of June 30, 2017 and changes in restricted stock outstanding during the nine months then ended is presented below:

	Nine Mon June 30		
	Shares (in thousands)	A	Veighted Average Exercise Price
Unvested at October 1,	648	\$	64.24
Granted	292		78.69
Vested (1)	(271)		63.81
Forfeited	(9)		67.79
Unvested on June 30, 2017	660	\$	70.76

<sup>(1)</sup> The number of restricted stock awards vested includes shares that we withheld on behalf of our employees to satisfy the statutory tax withholding requirements.

#### 9. Debt

At June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016, we had the following unsecured long-term debt outstanding:

	Pr	incipal		ed Discount and wance Costs			
	June 30, 2017	····,		September 30, 2016			
	(in thousands)						
Unsecured senior notes issued March 19, 2015:							
Due March 19, 2025	\$ 500,000	\$ 500,000	\$ (7,363)	\$ (8,153)			
	500,000	500,000	(7,363)	(8,153)			
Less long-term debt due within one year	_	_					
Long-term debt	\$ 500,000	\$ 500,000	\$ (7,363)	\$ (8,153)			

On March 19, 2015, we issued \$500 million of 4.65 percent 10-year unsecured senior notes. The net proceeds, after discount and issuance cost, have been or will be used for general corporate purposes, including capital expenditures associated with our rig construction program. Interest is payable semi-annually on March 15 and September 15. The debt discount is being amortized to interest expense using the effective interest method. The debt issuance costs are amortized straight-line over the stated life of the obligation, which approximates the effective interest method.

We have a \$300 million unsecured revolving credit facility which will mature on July 13, 2021. The credit facility has \$75 million available to use as letters of credit. The majority of any borrowings under the facility would accrue interest at a spread over the London Interbank Offered Rate (LIBOR). We also pay a commitment fee based on the unused balance of the facility. Borrowing spreads as well as commitment fees are determined according to a scale based on a ratio of our total debt to total capitalization. The spread over LIBOR ranges from 1.125 percent to 1.75 percent per annum and commitment fees range from .15 percent to .30 percent per annum. Based on our debt to total capitalization on June 30, 2017, the spread over LIBOR and commitment fees would be 1.125 percent and .15 percent, respectively. There is one financial covenant in the facility which requires us to maintain a funded leverage ratio (as defined) of less than 50 percent. The credit facility contains additional terms, conditions, restrictions and covenants that we believe are usual and customary in unsecured debt arrangements for companies of similar size and credit quality including a limitation that priority debt (as defined in the agreement) may not exceed 17.5% of the net worth of the Company. As of June 30, 2017, there were no borrowings, but there were three letters of credit outstanding in the amount of \$38.8 million. At June 30, 2017, we had \$261.2 million available to borrow under our \$300 million unsecured credit facility.

The applicable agreements for all unsecured debt contain additional terms, conditions and restrictions that we believe are usual and customary in unsecured debt arrangements for companies that are similar in size and credit quality. At June 30, 2017, we were in compliance with all debt covenants.

#### 10. Income Taxes

Our effective tax rate for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 and 2016 was 32.3 percent and 62.9 percent, respectively. Our effective tax rate for the third quarter ending June 30, 2017 and 2016 was 31.2 percent and -15.5 percent, respectively. Effective tax rates differ from the U.S. federal statutory rate of 35.0 percent primarily due to state and foreign income taxes and the tax benefit from the Internal Revenue Code Section 199 deduction for domestic production activities. The effective tax rate for the nine months ended June 30, 2016 was also impacted by a December 2015 tax law change which resulted in a reduction of the fiscal 2015 Internal Revenue Code Section 199 deduction for domestic production activities.

For the next 12 months, we cannot predict with certainty whether we will achieve ultimate resolution of any uncertain tax positions associated with our U.S. and international operations that could result in increases or decreases of our unrecognized tax benefits. However, we do not expect the increases or decreases to have a material effect on results of operations or financial position.

#### 11. Commitments and Contingencies

Equipment, parts and supplies are ordered in advance to promote efficient construction and capital improvement progress. At June 30, 2017, we had purchase commitments for equipment, parts and supplies of approximately \$59.7 million.

We are contingently liable to sureties in respect of bonds issued by the sureties in connection with certain commitments entered into by us in the normal course of business. We have agreed to indemnify the sureties for any payments made by them in respect of such bonds.

During the ordinary course of our business, contingencies arise resulting from an existing condition, situation or set of circumstances involving an uncertainty as to the realization of a possible gain contingency. We account for gain contingencies in accordance with the provisions of ASC 450, Contingencies, and, therefore, we do not record gain contingencies or recognize income until realized. The property and equipment of our Venezuelan subsidiary was seized by the Venezuelan government on June 30, 2010. Our wholly-owned subsidiaries, Helmerich & Payne International Drilling Co. ("HPIDC") and Helmerich & Payne de Venezuela, C.A., filed a lawsuit in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia on September 23, 2011 against the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela, Petroleos de Venezuela, S.A. and PDVSA Petroleo, S.A. Our subsidiaries seek damages for the taking of their Venezuelan drilling business in violation of international law and for breach of contract. While there exists the possibility of realizing a recovery, we are currently unable to determine the timing or amounts we may receive, if any, or the likelihood of recovery. No gain contingencies are recognized in our Consolidated Financial Statements.

The Company and its subsidiaries are parties to various other pending legal actions arising in the ordinary course of our business. We maintain insurance against certain business risks subject to certain deductibles. Although no assurance can be given, we believe, based on our experiences to date and taking into account established reserves and insurance, that the ultimate resolution of such items will not have a material adverse impact on our financial condition, cash flows, or results of operations. When we determine a loss is probable of occurring and is reasonably estimable, we accrue an undiscounted liability for such contingencies based on our best estimate using information available at that time. If the estimated loss is a range of potential outcomes and there is no better estimate within the range, we accrue the amount at the low end of the range. We disclose contingencies where an adverse outcome may be material, or in the judgment of management, we conclude the matter should otherwise be disclosed.

On November 8, 2013, the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Louisiana approved the previously disclosed October 30, 2013 plea agreement between our wholly owned subsidiary, HPIDC, and the United States Department of Justice, United States Attorney's Office for the Eastern District of Louisiana ("DOJ"). The court's approval of the plea agreement resolved the DOJ's investigation into certain choke manifold testing irregularities that occurred in 2010 at one of HPIDC's offshore platform rigs in the Gulf of Mexico. We also engaged in discussions with the Inspector General's office of the Department of Interior ("DOI") regarding the same events that were the subject of the DOJ's investigation. Although we do not presently anticipate any further action by the DOI in this matter, we can provide no assurance as to the timing or eventual outcome of the DOI's consideration of the matter.

On or about April 28, 2015, Joshua Keel ("Keel"), an employee of HPIDC, filed a petition in the 152nd Judicial Court for Harris County, Texas (Cause No. 2015-24531) against us, our customer and several subcontractors of our customer. The suit arose from injuries Keel sustained in an accident that occurred while he was working on HPIDC Rig 223 in New Mexico in July of 2014. Keel alleged that the defendants were negligent and negligent *per se*, acted recklessly, intentionally, and/or with an utterly wanton disregard for the rights and safety of the plaintiff and sought damages well in excess of \$100 million. Pursuant to the terms of the drilling contract between HPIDC and its customer, HPIDC indemnified most of the co-defendants in the lawsuit. On September 14, 2016, the parties in the *Keel* litigation entered into a global settlement agreement, which was approved by the court on October 14, 2016. The total settlement amount of \$72 million, accrued at September 30, 2016, was paid by the Company and its insurers on behalf of all defendants, in December 2016, pursuant to industry standard contractual indemnification obligations.

#### 12. Segment Information

We operate principally in the contract drilling industry. The contract drilling operations consist mainly of contracting Company-owned drilling equipment primarily to large oil and gas exploration companies. Our contract drilling business includes the following reportable operating segments: U.S. Land, Offshore and International Land. Each reportable operating segment is a strategic business unit that is managed separately. Our primary international areas of operation include Colombia, Ecuador, Argentina, Bahrain, U.A.E. and other South American and Middle Eastern countries. Other includes additional non-reportable operating segments. Revenues included in Other consist primarily of rental income. Consolidated revenues and expenses reflect the elimination of all material intercompany transactions.

We evaluate segment performance based on income or loss from continuing operations (segment operating income) before income taxes which includes:

- revenues from external and internal customers
- direct operating costs
- · depreciation and
- allocated general and administrative costs

but excludes corporate costs for other depreciation, income from asset sales and other corporate income and expense.

General and administrative costs are allocated to the segments based primarily on specific identification and, to the extent that such identification is not practical, on other methods which we believe to be a reasonable reflection of the utilization of services provided.

Segment operating income for all segments is a non-GAAP financial measure of our performance, as it excludes certain general and administrative expenses, corporate depreciation, income from asset sales and other corporate income and expense. We consider segment operating income to be an important supplemental measure of operating performance by presenting trends in our core businesses. We use this measure to facilitate period-to-period comparisons in operating performance of our reportable segments in the aggregate by eliminating items that affect comparability between periods. We believe that segment operating income is useful to investors because it provides a means to evaluate the operating performance of the segments on an ongoing basis using criteria that are used by our internal decision makers. Additionally, it highlights operating trends and aids analytical comparisons. However, segment operating income has limitations and should not be used as an alternative to operating income or loss, a performance measure determined in accordance with GAAP, as it excludes certain costs that may affect our operating performance in future periods.

#### Table of Contents

Summarized financial information of our reportable segments for the nine months ended June 30,2017 and 2016 is shown in the following tables:

		_		Segment
	External	Inter-	Total	Operating
(in thousands)	Sales	Segment	Sales	Income (Loss)
June 30, 2017				
Contract Drilling				
U.S. Land	\$ 1,000,119	\$ —	\$ 1,000,119	\$ (90,718)
Offshore	103,758	_	103,758	19,152
International Land	157,863	_	157,863	(5,225)
	1,261,740		1,261,740	(76,791)
Other	10,697	638	11,335	(5,752)
	1,272,437	638	1,273,075	(82,543)
Eliminations		(638)	(638)	
Total	\$ 1,272,437	\$ —	\$ 1,272,437	\$ (82,543)
				Segment
	External	Inter-	Total	Operating
(in thousands)	External Sales	Inter- Segment	Total Sales	0
June 30, 2016				Operating
(				Operating
June 30, 2016				Operating
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling	Sales	Segment	Sales	Operating Income (Loss)
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling U.S. Land	Sales \$ 1,004,116	Segment	Sales \$ 1,004,116	Operating Income (Loss)  \$ 143,855
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling U.S. Land Offshore	\$ 1,004,116 106,697	Segment  \$ —	\$ 1,004,116 106,697	Operating Income (Loss)  \$ 143,855
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling U.S. Land Offshore	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529	Segment	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529	Operating Income (Loss)  \$ 143,855
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling U.S. Land Offshore International Land	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529 1,282,342	Segment	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529 1,282,342	Operating Income (Loss)  \$ 143,855
June 30, 2016 Contract Drilling U.S. Land Offshore International Land	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529 1,282,342 10,182	\$	\$ 1,004,116 106,697 171,529 1,282,342 10,817	Operating Income (Loss)  \$ 143,855     13,105     (13,924)     143,036     (4,839)

#### Table of Contents

Other

Eliminations Total

Summarized financial information of our reportable segments for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 is shown in the following tables:

(in thousands)	External Sales	Inter- Segment	Total Sales	Segment Operating Income (Loss)
June 30, 2017				
Contract Drilling				
U.S. Land	\$ 405,516	\$ —	\$ 405,516	\$ (7,980)
Offshore	33,711	_	33,711	6,456
International Land	55,075	_	55,075	4,927
	494,302		494,302	3,403
Other	4,262	222	4,484	(2,569)
	498,564	222	498,786	834
Eliminations		(222)	(222)	_
Total	\$ 498,564	<u>\$</u>	\$ 498,564	\$ 834
				Segment
	External	Inter-	Total	Operating
(in thousands)	Sales	Segment	Sales	Income (Loss)
June 30, 2016				
Contract Drilling				
U.S. Land	\$ 285,028	\$ —	\$ 285,028	\$ 25,802
Offshore	30,492	_	30,492	2,084
International Land	47,983	_	47,983	(4,991)

The following table reconciles segment operating income per the table above to income from continuing operations before income taxes as reported on the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations:

363,503

366,486

\$ 366,486

2,983

363,503

366,692

\$ 366,486

3,189

(206)

206

206

(206)

22,895

(2,186)

20,709

20,709

	Three Months Ended June 30,		Nine Mont		
	2017 2016		2017	2016	
			(in th	ousands)	
Segment operating income (loss)	\$	834	\$ 20,709	\$ (82,543)	\$ 138,197
Income from asset sales		1,862	547	17,593	7,820
Corporate general and administrative costs and corporate					
depreciation	(	(30,724)	(34,512)	(77,914)	(78,982)
Operating income (loss)		(28,028)	(13,256)	(142,864)	67,035
Other income (expense)					
Interest and dividend income		1,700	778	4,028	2,310
Interest expense		(6,364)	(6,407)	(17,503)	(16,652)
Other		(911)	534	(350)	926
Total unallocated amounts		(5,575)	(5,095)	(13,825)	(13,416)
Income (loss) from continuing operations before income taxes	\$ (	(33,603)	\$ (18,351)	\$ (156,689)	\$ 53,619

The following table presents total assets by reportable segment:

	June 30, 2017	September 30, 2016
	(in th	ousands)
Total assets		
U.S. Land	\$ 4,974,364	\$ 5,005,299
Offshore	98,568	105,152
International Land	417,241	487,181
Other	134,804	36,141
	5,624,977	5,633,773
Investments and corporate operations	888,907	1,198,182
Total assets from continued operations	6,513,884	6,831,955
Discontinued operations	7	64
	\$ 6,513,891	\$ 6,832,019

The following table presents revenues from external customers by country based on the location of service provided:

		nths Ended e 30,		nths Ended e 30,	
	2017	2016	2017	2016	
	(in thousands)				
Operating Revenues					
United States	\$ 443,489	\$ 318,059	\$ 1,114,574	\$ 1,113,542	
Argentina	43,167	33,208	114,516	118,365	
Colombia	9,356	3,831	27,579	15,176	
Ecuador	3	481	5	4,948	
Other Foreign	2,549	10,907	15,763	40,493	
Total	\$ 498,564	\$ 366,486	\$ 1,272,437	\$ 1,292,524	

#### 13. Pensions and Other Post-retirement Benefits

The following provides information at June 30, 2017 related to the Company-sponsored domestic defined benefit pension plan:

Components of Net Periodic Benefit Cost

	Three Mor	ths Ended	Nine Mon June	ths Ended		
	2017	2016 2017		2016 201		2016
		(in thousands)				
Interest cost	\$ 975	\$ 1,116	\$ 2,925	\$ 3,347		
Expected return on plan assets	(1,298)	(1,490)	(3,896)	(4,470)		
Recognized net actuarial loss	574	493	1,724	1,479		
Settlement	1,411	1,889	1,411	3,343		
Net pension expense	\$ 1,662	\$ 2,008	\$ 2,164	\$ 3,699		

We record settlement expense when benefit payments exceed the total annual service and interest costs.

#### **Employer Contributions**

We did not contribute to the Pension Plan during the nine months ended June 30, 2017. We could make contributions for the remainder of fiscal 2017 to fund distributions in lieu of liquidating assets.

#### 14. Supplemental Cash Flow Information

Capital expenditures on the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Cash Flows do not include additions which have been incurred but not paid for as of the end of the period. The following table reconciles total capital expenditures incurred to total capital expenditures in the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Cash Flows:

	Nine Mon June	
	2017	2016
	(in tho	usands)
Capital expenditures incurred	\$ 315,735	\$ 198,606
Additions incurred prior year but paid for in current year	9,465	25,344
Additions incurred but not paid for as of the end of the period	(24,925)	(4,401)
Capital expenditures per Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows	\$ 300,275	\$ 219,549

#### 15. International Risk Factors

We currently have foreign operations in South America and the Middle East. In the future, we may further expand the geographic reach of our operations. As a result, we are exposed to certain political, economic and other uncertainties not encountered in U.S. operations, including increased risks of social unrest, strikes, terrorism, war, kidnapping of employees, nationalization, forced negotiation or modification of contracts, difficulty resolving disputes and enforcing contract provisions, expropriation of equipment as well as expropriation of oil and gas exploration and drilling rights, taxation policies, foreign exchange restrictions and restrictions on repatriation of income and capital, currency rate fluctuations, increased governmental ownership and regulation of the economy and industry in the markets in which we operate, economic and financial instability of national oil companies, and restrictive governmental regulation, bureaucratic delays and general hazards associated with foreign sovereignty over certain areas in which operations are conducted.

South American countries, in particular, have historically experienced uneven periods of economic growth, as well as recession, periods of high inflation and general economic and political instability. From time to time these risks have impacted our business. For example, on June 30, 2010, the Venezuelan government expropriated 11 rigs and associated real and personal property owned by our Venezuelan subsidiary. Prior thereto, we also experienced currency devaluation losses in Venezuela and difficulty repatriating U.S. dollars to the United States. Today, our contracts for work in foreign countries generally provide for payment in U.S. dollars. However, in Argentina we are paid in Argentine pesos. The Argentine branch of one of our second-tier subsidiaries then remits U.S. dollars to its U.S. parent by converting the Argentine pesos into U.S. dollars through the Argentine Foreign Exchange Market and repatriating the U.S. dollars.

Estimates from published sources indicate that Argentina is a highly inflationary country, which is defined as cumulative inflation rates exceeding 100 percent in the most recent three-year period based on inflation data published by the respective governments. Nonetheless, all of our foreign operations use the U.S. dollar as the functional currency and local currency monetary assets and liabilities are remeasured into U.S. dollars with gains and losses resulting from foreign currency transactions included in current results of operations.

In December 2015, the Argentine peso experienced a sharp devaluation resulting in an aggregate foreign currency loss of \$9.4 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2016. Subsequent to the sharp devaluation, the Argentine peso significantly stabilized and the Argentine Foreign Exchange Market controls now place fewer restrictions on repatriating U.S. dollars. For the nine months ended June 30, 2017, we experienced aggregate foreign currency losses of \$3.3 million. However, in the future, other contracts or applicable law may require payments to be made in

foreign currencies. As such, there can be no assurance that we will not experience in Argentina or elsewhere a devaluation of foreign currency, foreign exchange restrictions or other difficulties repatriating U.S. dollars even if we are able to negotiate contract provisions designed to mitigate such risks. In the event of future payments in foreign currencies and an inability to timely exchange foreign currencies for U.S. dollars, we may incur currency devaluation losses which could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Because of the impact of local laws, our future operations in certain areas may be conducted through entities in which local citizens own interests and through entities (including joint ventures) in which we hold only a minority interest or pursuant to arrangements under which we conduct operations under contract to local entities. While we believe that neither operating through such entities nor pursuant to such arrangements would have a material adverse effect on our operations or revenues, there can be no assurance that we will in all cases be able to structure or restructure our operations to conform to local law (or the administration thereof) on terms acceptable to us.

Although we attempt to minimize the potential impact of such risks by operating in more than one geographical area, during the nine months ended June 30, 2017, approximately 12.4 percent of our consolidated operating revenues were generated from international locations in our contract drilling business. During the nine months ended June 30, 2017, approximately 90.0 percent of operating revenues from international locations were from operations in South America. Substantially all of the South American operating revenues were from Argentina and Colombia. The future occurrence of one or more international events arising from the types of risks described above could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

#### 16. Recently Issued Accounting Standards

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, Revenue from Contracts with Customers, which supersedes virtually all existing revenue recognition guidance. Throughout 2016 and in early 2017, additional accounting guidance was issued to clarify the not yet effective revenue recognition guidance issued in May 2014. The ASU provides for full retrospective, modified retrospective, or use of the cumulative effect method during the period of adoption. During 2017, we established an implementation team and began a detailed analysis of our contracts in place during the retrospective period. We anticipate we will have two primary revenue streams consisting of lease and service components. The requirements in this ASU are effective during interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017. We expect to adopt this new revenue guidance utilizing the modified retrospective method of adoption in the first quarter of fiscal 2019. As we are still evaluating certain aspects of our contract drilling revenue, we are unable to quantify the impact that the new revenue standard will have on our consolidated financial statements at this time.

In August 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-15, Presentation of Financial Statements – Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern. The guidance provides principles and definitions for management that are intended to reduce diversity in the timing and content of disclosures provided in footnotes. Under the standard, management is required to evaluate for each annual and interim reporting period whether it is probable that the entity will not be able to meet its obligations as they become due within one year after the date that financial statements are issued (or are available to be issued, where applicable). The standard is effective for annual periods ending after December 15, 2016. We do not expect the adoption of this standard to have an impact on the consolidated financial statements.

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-11, *Inventory (Topic 330): Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory.* This update simplifies the subsequent measurement of inventory. It replaces the current lower of cost or market test with the lower of cost or net realizable value test. Net realizable value is defined as the estimated selling prices in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. The new standard should be applied prospectively and is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016 and interim periods within those annual periods, with early adoption permitted. We do not expect the adoption of this standard to have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-01, Financial Instruments – Overall (Subtopic 825-10): Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities. The standard requires entities to measure equity investments that do not result in consolidation and are not accounted for under the equity method at fair value and recognize any changes in fair value in net income. The provisions of ASU No. 2016-01 are effective for interim and annual periods starting after December 15, 2017. At adoption, a cumulative-effect adjustment to beginning retained earnings will be recorded. We will adopt this standard on October 1, 2018. Subsequent to adoption, changes in the fair value of our available-for-sale investments will be recognized in net income and the effect will be subject to stock market fluctuations.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. ASU No. 2016-02 will require organizations that lease assets — referred to as "lessees" — to recognize on the balance sheet the assets and liabilities for the rights and obligations created by those leases. Under ASU No. 2016-02, a lessee will be required to recognize assets and liabilities for leases with lease terms of more than 12 months. Lessor accounting remains substantially similar to current GAAP. In addition, disclosures of leasing activities are to be expanded to include qualitative along with specific quantitative information. For public entities, ASU No. 2016-02 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim periods within those fiscal years. ASU No. 2016-02 mandates a modified retrospective transition method. We expect to adopt this new lease guidance utilizing the modified retrospective method of adoption in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 concurrently with ASU 2014-09. We are currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this guidance on our consolidated financial statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting. ASU No. 2016-09 simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. For public entities, ASU No. 2016-09 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. We are currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this guidance on our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments—Credit Losses*. The ASU sets forth a "current expected credit loss" (CECL) model which requires companies to measure all expected credit losses for financial instruments held at the reporting date based on historical experience, current conditions and reasonable supportable forecasts. This replaces the existing incurred loss model and is applicable to the measurement of credit losses on financial assets measured at amortized cost and applies to some off-balance sheet credit exposures. This standard is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2019. We are currently assessing the impact this standard will have on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments (a consensus of the Emerging Issues Task Force). The ASU is intended to reduce diversity in practice in presentation and classification of certain cash receipts and cash payments by providing guidance on eight specific cash flow issues. The ASU is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and early adoption is permitted, including adoption during an interim period. We are currently assessing the impact this standard will have on our consolidated statement of cash flows.

In March 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-07, Compensation - Retirement Benefits (Topic 715): Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost. ASU 2017-07 will change how employers that sponsor defined benefit pension and/or other post-retirement benefit plans present the net periodic benefit cost in the income statement. Employers will present the service cost component of net periodic benefit cost in the same income statement line item(s) as other employee compensation costs arising from services rendered during the period. Employers will present the other components of the net periodic benefit cost separately from the line item(s) that includes the service cost and outside of any subtotal of operating income, if one is presented. This standard is effective for public business entities for annual periods or any interim periods beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within those periods. Early adoption is permitted. We do not expect the new guidance to have a material impact on its financial condition or results of operation.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, Statement of Cash Flows - Restricted Cash. The ASU requires amounts generally described as restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents be included with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the total beginning and ending amounts for the periods shown on the statement of cash flows. We will adopt the guidance beginning October 1, 2018 applied retrospectively to all periods presented. The adoption is not expected to have a material impact on our consolidated financial position or cash flows.

#### 17. Guarantor and Non-Guarantor Financial Information

In March 2015, Helmerich & Payne International Drilling Co. ("the issuer"), a 100 percent owned subsidiary of Helmerich & Payne, Inc. ("parent", "the guarantor"), issued senior unsecured notes with an aggregate principal amount of \$500.0 million. The notes are fully and unconditionally guaranteed by the parent. No subsidiaries of parent currently guarantee the notes, subject to certain provisions that if any subsidiary guarantees certain other debt of the issuer or parent, then such subsidiary will provide a guarantee of the obligations under the notes.

In connection with the notes, we are providing the following condensed consolidating financial information in accordance with the Securities and Exchange Commission disclosure requirements. Each entity in the consolidating financial information follows the same accounting policies as described in the consolidated financial statements. Condensed consolidating financial information for the issuer, Helmerich & Payne International Drilling Co., and parent, guarantor, Helmerich & Payne, Inc. is shown in the tables below.

### CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (in thousands)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017				
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated
Operating revenue	\$ —	\$ 439,227	\$ 59,355	\$ (18)	\$ 498,564
Operating costs and other	3,364	463,220	60,224	(216)	526,592
Operating loss from continuing operations	(3,364)	(23,993)	(869)	198	(28,028)
Other income (expense), net	(4)	2,052	(1,061)	(198)	789
Interest expense	(87)	(5,294)	(983)	_	(6,364)
Equity in net income (loss) of subsidiaries	(19,510)	(85)		19,595	
Loss from continuing operations before income taxes	(22,965)	(27,320)	(2,913)	19,595	(33,603)
Income tax provision	(1,166)	(7,360)	(1,952)		(10,478)
Loss from continuing operations	(21,799)	(19,960)	(961)	19,595	(23,125)
Loss from discontinued operations before income taxes			3,223	_	3,223
Income tax provision	_	_	1,897	_	1,897
Loss from discontinued operations			1,326		1,326
Net income (loss)	\$ (21,799)	\$ (19,960)	\$ 365	\$ 19,595	\$ (21,799)

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS) (in thousands)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017					
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated	
Net income (loss)	\$ (21,799)	\$ (19,960)	\$ 365	\$ 19,595	\$ (21,799)	
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of income						
taxes:						
Unrealized depreciation on securities, net	_	(6,899)	_	_	(6,899)	
Minimum pension liability adjustments, net	104	261	_	_	365	
Other comprehensive income (loss)	104	(6,638)			(6,534)	
Comprehensive income (loss)	\$ (21,695)	\$ (26,598)	\$ 365	\$ 19,595	\$ (28,333)	

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (in thousands)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2016					
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated	
Operating revenue	\$ —	\$ 315,077	\$ 51,429	\$ (20)	\$ 366,486	
Operating costs and other	3,712	314,620	61,700	(290)	379,742	
Operating income (loss) from continuing operations	(3,712)	457	(10,271)	270	(13,256)	
Other income, net	16	1,290	276	(270)	1,312	
Interest expense	(62)	(5,597)	(748)	` —	(6,407)	
Equity in net loss of subsidiaries	(18,572)	(7,796)	_	26,368		
Loss from continuing operations before income taxes	(22,330)	(11,646)	(10,743)	26,368	(18,351)	
Income tax provision Loss from continuing operations	(1,130) (21,200)	7,230 (18,876)	(3,258)	26,368	2,842 (21,193)	
Loss nom continuing operations	(21,200)	(10,070)	(7,103)	20,500	(21,175)	
Income from discontinued operations before income taxes	_	_	2,193	_	2,193	
Income tax provision	_	_	2,200	_	2,200	
Loss from discontinued operations			(7)		(7)	
				<del></del>		
Net loss	\$ (21,200)	\$ (18,876)	\$ (7,492)	\$ 26,368	\$ (21,200)	

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS) (in thousands)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2016					
			Non-		<del></del>	
	Guarantor/	Issuer	Guarantor		Total	
	Parent	Subsidiary	Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Consolidated	
Net loss	\$ (21,200)	\$ (18,876)	\$ (7,492)	\$ 26,368	\$ (21,200)	
Other comprehensive income, net of income taxes:						
Unrealized depreciation on securities, net	_	9,744	_	_	9,744	
Minimum pension liability adjustments, net	107	207	_	_	314	
Other comprehensive income	107	9,951	_		10,058	
Comprehensive loss	\$ (21,093)	\$ (8,925)	\$ (7,492)	\$ 26,368	\$ (11,142)	

### CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017						
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated		
Operating revenue	\$ —	\$ 1,103,877	\$ 168,611	\$ (51)	\$ 1,272,437		
Operating costs and other	10,124	1,218,266	187,588	(677)	1,415,301		
	(10.124)	(114.200)	(10.077)	(2)	(1.42.964)		
Operating loss from continuing operations	(10,124)	(114,389)	(18,977)	626	(142,864)		
Other income, net	(3)	4,885	(578)	(626)	3,678		
Interest expense	(260)	(15,151)	(2,092)		(17,503)		
Equity in net loss of subsidiaries	(99,179)	(10,874)	_	110,053	_		
Loss from continuing operations before income							
taxes	(109,566)	(135,529)	(21,647)	110,053	(156,689)		
Income tax provision	(3,886)	(37,320)	(9,331)	_	(50,537)		
Loss from continuing operations	(105,680)	(98,209)	(12,316)	110,053	(106,152)		
Ŭ.		,	, , ,		` '		
Loss from discontinued operations before income							
taxes	_	_	2,705	_	2,705		
Income tax provision	_	_	2,233	_	2,233		
Loss from discontinued operations			472		472		
Net loss	\$ (105,680)	\$ (98,209)	\$ (11,844)	\$ 110,053	\$ (105,680)		

### CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017								
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated				
Net loss	\$(105,680)	\$ (98,209)	\$ (11,844)	\$ 110,053	\$ (105,680)				
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of income									
taxes:									
Unrealized depreciation on securities, net	_	(4,994)	_	_	(4,994)				
Minimum pension liability adjustments, net	316	781	_	_	1,097				
Other comprehensive income (loss)	316	(4,213)			(3,897)				
Comprehensive loss	\$(105,364)	\$(102,422)	\$ (11,844)	\$ 110,053	\$ (109,577)				

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2016							
	Guarantor/ Issuer Guaran		Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Guarantor				
Operating revenue	\$ —	\$ 1,103,361	\$ 189,216	\$ (53)	\$ 1,292,524			
Operating costs and other	9,573	1,003,369	213,640	(1,093)	1,225,489			
Operating income (loss) from continuing operations	(9,573)	99,992	(24,424)	1,040	67,035			
Other income (expense), net	(235)	2,680	1,831	(1,040)	3,236			
Interest expense	(186)	(15,587)	(879)	(1,040)	(16,652)			
Equity in net income (loss) of subsidiaries	22,042	(23,811)	_	1,769	_			
Income (loss) from continuing operations before	<u></u>	<u> </u>						
income taxes	12,048	63,274	(23,472)	1,769	53,619			
Income tax provision	(3,959)	42,114	(4,415)	_	33,740			
Income (loss) from continuing operations	16,007	21,160	(19,057)	1,769	19,879			
Income from discontinued operations before								
income taxes	_	_	2,241	_	2,241			
Income tax provision			6,113		6,113			
Loss from discontinued operations			(3,872)		(3,872)			
Net income (loss)	\$ 16,007	\$ 21,160	\$ (22,929)	\$ 1,769	\$ 16,007			

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2016							
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	-	Non- uarantor bsidiaries	Elin	minations	Co	Total nsolidated
Net income (loss)	\$ 16,007	\$ 21,160	\$	(22,929)	\$	1,769	\$	16,007
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of income								
taxes:								
Unrealized depreciation on securities, net	_	(2,719)		_		_		(2,719)
Minimum pension liability adjustments, net	322	618		_		_		940
Other comprehensive income (loss)	322	(2,101)						(1,779)
Comprehensive income (loss)	\$ 16,329	\$ 19,059	\$	(22,929)	\$	1,769	\$	14,228

### CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED BALANCE SHEETS (in thousands)

ASSETS  Current assets:  Cash and cash equivalents  Short-term investments  Accounts receivable, net of reserve  Inventories  Prepaid expenses and other  Total current assets  15,655  Investments  13,606  Investments  13,606  Investments  13,606  Investments  13,606  Investments  Investment in subsidiaries  Investment in	June 30, 2017								
Current assets:         Cash and cash equivalents         \$ (1,141)         \$ 559,945         \$ 13,983         —         \$ Short-term investments           Accounts receivable, net of reserve         2,095         380,873         57,909         (5)           Inventories         —         103,066         35,337         —           Prepaid expenses and other         14,701         7,199         66,820         (30,255)           Current assets of discontinued operations         —         —         7         —           Total current assets         15,655         1,090,937         174,056         (30,260)         1           Investments         13,606         63,380         —         —         —           Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         6         6           Goodwill         —         —         —         51,569         —         —         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10         10	Total onsolidated								
Cash and cash equivalents         \$ (1,141)         \$ 559,945         \$ 13,983         —         \$ Short-term investments         —         39,894         —         —         Accounts receivable, net of reserve         2,095         380,873         57,909         (5)           Inventories         —         103,066         35,337         —           Prepaid expenses and other         14,701         7,159         66,820         (30,255)           Current assets of discontinued operations         —         —         7         —           Total current assets         15,655         1,090,937         174,056         (30,260)         1           Investments         13,606         63,380         —         —         —         —           Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         —           Goodwill         —         —         51,569         —         —         —         51,569         —         —         —         1,7667         —         —         —         51,569         —         —         —         1,7669         —         — <th></th>									
Short-term investments									
Short-term investments	572,787								
Accounts receivable, net of reserve         2,095         380,873         57,909         (5)           Inventories         —         103,066         35,337         —           Prepaid expenses and other         14,701         7,159         66,820         (30,255)           Current assets of discontinued operations         —         —         7         —           Total current assets         15,655         1,090,937         174,056         (30,260)         1           Investments         13,606         63,380         —         —         —           Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         —         —           Goodwill         —         —         51,967         —         —         —         19,967         —         —         —         10,966,460         —         —         —         51,569         —         —         —         —         51,569         —         —         —         10,967         —         —         —         10,948         —         —         —         10,948         —         — <td>39,894</td>	39,894								
Inventories	440,872								
Current assets of discontinued operations         —         —         7         —         —           Total current assets         15,655         1,090,937         174,056         (30,260)         1           Investments         13,606         63,380         —         —           Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         0           Goodwill         —         —         51,967         —           Intangible assets, net of amortization         —         —         51,569         —           Other assets         4,992         5,577         9,498         —           Investment in subsidiaries         5,480,782         197,768         —         (5,678,550)           Total assets         \$5,656,838         \$7,752,655         \$909,854         \$(7,805,456)         \$6           LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY         Current liabilities:           Accounts payable         \$80,333         \$52,929         \$3,944         \$         —           Accrued liabilities         26,104         172,480         28,319         (30,260) <td>138,403</td>	138,403								
Total current assets   15,655   1,090,937   174,056   (30,260)   1	58,425								
Investments	7								
Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         260,044         260,046         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,046         260,046         260,194         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,194	,250,388								
Property, plant and equipment, net         51,118         4,658,226         353,570         —         5           Intercompany         90,685         1,736,767         269,194         (2,096,646)         260,044         260,046         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,046         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,046         260,046         260,194         260,194         (2,096,646)         260,194	76,986								
Intercompany   90,685   1,736,767   269,194   (2,096,646)     Goodwill     -   51,967       Intangible assets, net of amortization     51,569       Other assets   4,992   5,577   9,498       Investment in subsidiaries   5,480,782   197,768     (5,678,550)      Total assets   \$5,656,838   \$7,752,655   \$909,854   \$(7,805,456)   \$6      LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY     Current liabilities:   Accounts payable   \$80,333   \$52,929   \$3,944   \$-   \$4     Accrued liabilities   26,104   172,480   28,319   (30,260)	5,062,914								
Goodwill	,002,714								
Intangible assets, net of amortization	51,967								
Other assets         4,992         5,577         9,498         —           Investment in subsidiaries         5,480,782         197,768         —         (5,678,550)           Total assets         \$5,656,838         \$7,752,655         \$909,854         \$(7,805,456)         \$6           LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY           Current liabilities:         Accounts payable         \$80,333         \$52,929         \$3,944         —         \$           Accrued liabilities         26,104         172,480         28,319         (30,260)	51,569								
Investment in subsidiaries	20,067								
Total assets \$5,656,838 \$7,752,655 \$909,854 \$(7,805,456) \$6  LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY  Current liabilities: Accounts payable \$80,333 \$52,929 \$3,944 \$ — \$  Accrued liabilities 26,104 172,480 28,319 (30,260)	20,007								
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY           Current liabilities:         80,333         52,929         3,944         -         \$           Accounts payable         80,333         172,480         28,319         (30,260)									
Current liabilities:       80,333       52,929       3,944       - \$         Accrued liabilities       26,104       172,480       28,319       (30,260)	5,513,891								
Accounts payable       \$ 80,333       \$ 52,929       \$ 3,944       \$ — \$         Accrued liabilities       26,104       172,480       28,319       (30,260)									
Accrued liabilities 26,104 172,480 28,319 (30,260)									
	137,206								
Current liabilities of discontinued operations — — 80 —	196,643								
or and or and open open open open open open open open	80								
Total current liabilities 106,437 225,409 32,343 (30,260)	333,929								
Noncurrent liabilities:									
Long-term debt — 492,637 — —	492,637								
	,325,250								
Intercompany 1.284,237 255,190 557,119 (2,096,546)									
Other 25,359 41,849 41,738 —	108,946								
Noncurrent liabilities of discontinued operations — — 3,225 —	3,225								
<u> </u>	,930,058								
Shareholders' equity:									
Common stock 11,190 100 — (100)	11,190								
Additional paid-in capital 478,231 51,993 967 (52,960)	478,231								
	,954,705								
Accumulated other comprehensive income (4,101) 880 — (880)	(4,101)								
	(190,121)								
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	,249,904								
10tal Shaleholucis equity 4,249,904 3,404,671 213,779 (3,078,030) 4	,,,47,704								
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity \$5,656,838 \$7,752,655 \$909,854 \$(7,805,456) \$6	,513,891								

### CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED BALANCE SHEETS (in thousands)

	September 30, 2016							
			Non-	010				
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated			
ASSETS								
Current assets:								
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ (955)	\$ 899,028	\$ 7.488	s —	\$ 905,561			
Short-term investments	ψ (222)	44,148	φ 7,400	Ψ —	44,148			
Accounts receivable, net of reserve		325,325	51,121	(1,279)	375,169			
Inventories	2	87,946	36,379	(1,279)	124,325			
Prepaid expenses and other	6.928	20,625	71,753	(21,239)	78,067			
Assets held for sale	0,928	18,471	26,881	(21,239)				
		10,4/1			45,352			
Current assets of discontinued operations	5.075	1 205 542	102 (06	(22.510)	64			
Total current assets	5,975	1,395,543	193,686	(22,518)	1,572,686			
To a set of a set of a	12 421	71.504			04.055			
Investments	13,431	71,524	260.024	_	84,955			
Property, plant and equipment, net	59,173	4,716,736	368,824	(1.676.400)	5,144,733			
Intercompany	16,147	1,399,323	260,939	(1,676,409)	4.710			
Goodwill	_	_	4,718	_	4,718			
Intangible assets, net of amortization	_		919		919			
Other assets	233	267	23,508		24,008			
Investment in subsidiaries	5,579,713	208,118		(5,787,831)				
Total assets	\$5,674,672	\$7,791,511	\$852,594	\$(7,486,758)	\$6,832,019			
LIABILITIES AND SHAREHOLDERS' EQUITY								
Current liabilities:								
Accounts payable	\$ 80,000	\$ 10,868	\$ 5,828	\$ (1,274)	\$ 95,422			
Accrued liabilities	1,822	176,985	35,598	20,234	234,639			
Current liabilities of discontinued operations	-,022		59		59			
Total current liabilities	81,822	187,853	41,485	18,960	330,120			
Total cultent habilities	01,022	107,033	71,703	10,700	330,120			
Noncurrent liabilities:								
Long-term debt	_	491,847		_	491,847			
Deferred income taxes	(5,930)	1,303,324	45,062	_	1,342,456			
Intercompany	1,016,673	209,276	491,838	(1,717,787)	· —			
Other	21,182	36,379	45,220		102,781			
Noncurrent liabilities of discontinued operations			3,890	_	3,890			
Total noncurrent liabilities	1,031,925	2,040,826	586,010	(1,717,787)	1,940,974			
	, ,	, ,	Ź		, ,			
Shareholders' equity:								
Common stock	11,140	100	_	(100)	11,140			
Additional paid-in capital	448,452	47,533	549	(48,082)	448,452			
Retained earnings	4,289,807	5,510,105	224,550	(5,734,655)	4,289,807			
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss)	(204)	5,094	´ —	(5,094)	(204)			
Treasury stock, at cost	(188,270)		_		(188,270)			
Total shareholders' equity	4,560,925	5,562,832	225,099	(5,787,931)	4,560,925			
	, ,,	, ,	7	( ) . ; )	, , ,			
Total liabilities and shareholders' equity	\$5,674,672	\$7,791,511	\$852,594	\$(7,486,758)	\$6,832,019			

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (in thousands)

	Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017								
		uarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Gua	Non- arantor sidiaries	Elimina	ntions	Co	Total onsolidated
Net cash provided by (used in) operating activities	\$	(4,457)	\$ 231,133	\$	9,458	\$	_	\$	236,134
INVESTING ACTIVITIES:									
Capital expenditures		(2,344)	(293,946)		(3,985)		_		(300,275)
Purchase of short-term investments			(48,958)		` _		_		(48,958)
Acquisition of business, net cash received		(70,416)			_		_		(70,416)
Proceeds from sale of short-term investments			53,150		_		_		53,150
Intercompany transfers		72,760	(72,760)		_		_		
Proceeds from asset sales		_	17,316		605		_		17,921
Net cash provided by (used in) investing activities			(345,198)		(3,380)				(348,578)
FINANCING ACTIVITIES:									
Intercompany transfers		229,061	(229,061)		_		_		_
Dividends paid		229,061)	(22),001)		_		_		(229,061)
Exercise of stock options, net of tax withholding	(-	10,458	_		_		_		10,458
Tax withholdings related to net share settlements of restricted stock		(5,848)	_		_		_		(5,848)
Excess tax benefit from stock-based									
compensation		(339)	4,043		417		—		4,121
Net cash provided by (used in) financing activities		4,271	(225,018)		417				(220,330)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash									
equivalents		(186)	(339,083)		6,495		_		(332,774)
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period		(955)	899,028		7,488		_		905,561
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	\$	(1,141)	\$ 559,945	\$	13,983	\$	_	\$	572,787

# CONSOLIDATED CONDENSED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS (in thousands)

		Nine M	onths Ended June	30, 2016	
	Guarantor/ Parent	Issuer Subsidiary	Non- Guarantor Subsidiaries	Eliminations	Total Consolidated
Net cash provided by (used in) operating	\$	\$	\$	\$	\$
activities	4,127	631,371	(20,088)	_	615,410
INVESTING ACTIVITIES:					
Capital expenditures	(15,515)	(200,611)	(3,423)	_	(219,549)
Purchase of short-term investments	(13,313)	(36,958)	(3,423)		(36,958)
Proceeds from sale of short-term investments		32,681			32,681
Intercompany transfers	15,515	(15,515)	_	_	52,001
Proceeds from asset sales	8	10,956	1,840	_	12,804
Net cash provided by (used in) investing		10,730	1,040		12,004
activities	8	(209,447)	(1,583)	_	(211,022)
4601 ( 1616)	0	(20),)	(1,000)		(211,022)
FINANCING ACTIVITIES:					
Debt issuance costs	_	(32)	_	_	(32)
Intercompany transfers	224,040	(224,040)	_	_	
Dividends paid	(224,040)	_	_	_	(224,040)
Exercise of stock options, net of tax withholding	483	_	_	_	483
Tax withholdings related to net share					
settlements of restricted stock	(3,912)		_	_	(3,912)
Excess tax benefit from stock-based					
compensation	(788)	1,351	198		761
Net cash provided by (used in) financing					
activities	(4,217)	(222,721)	198	_	(226,740)
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash					
equivalents	(82)	199,203	(21,473)	_	177,648
Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period	(838)	693,273	36,949		729,384
Cash and cash equivalents, end of period	\$ (920)	\$ 892,476	\$ 15,476	<u>\$</u>	\$ 907,032

# ITEM 2. MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS June 30, 2017

#### RISK FACTORS AND FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

The following discussion should be read in conjunction with the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements and related notes included elsewhere herein and the Consolidated Financial Statements and notes thereto included in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K. Our future operating results may be affected by various trends and factors which are beyond our control. These include, among other factors, fluctuations in natural gas and crude oil prices, the loss of one or a number of our largest customers, early termination of drilling contracts and failure to realize backlog drilling revenue, forfeiture of early termination payments under fixed term contracts due to sustained unacceptable performance, unsuccessful collection of receivables, inability to procure key rig components, failure to timely deliver rigs within applicable grace periods, disruption to or cessation of the business of our limited source vendors or fabricators, currency exchange losses, expropriation of assets and other international uncertainties, loss of well control, pollution of offshore waters and reservoir damage, operational risks that are not fully insured against or covered by adequate contractual indemnities, passage of laws or regulations including those limiting hydraulic fracturing, litigation and governmental investigations, consideration and possible action by the Department of Interior regarding the events that were the subject matter of our prior (previously disclosed) plea agreement with the United States Department of Justice, failure to comply with the United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, foreign anti-bribery laws and other governmental laws and regulations, a sluggish global economy, changes in general economic and political conditions, adverse weather conditions including hurricanes, rapid or unexpected changes in drilling or other technologies and uncertain business conditions that affect our businesses. Accordingly, past results and trends should not be used by investors to anticipate future results or trends. Our risk factors are more fully described in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K and elsewhere in this Form 10-Q.

With the exception of historical information, the matters discussed in Management's Discussion & Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations include forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements generally can be identified by the use of forward-looking terminology such as "may", "will", "expect", "intend", "estimate", "anticipate", "believe", or "continue" or the negative thereof or similar terminology. These forward-looking statements are based on various assumptions. We caution that, while we believe such assumptions to be reasonable and make them in good faith, assumptions about future events and conditions almost always vary from actual results. The differences between assumed facts and actual results can be material. We are including this cautionary statement to take advantage of the "safe harbor" provisions of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 for any forward-looking statements made by us or persons acting on our behalf. The factors identified in this cautionary statement are important factors (but not necessarily all important factors) that could cause actual results to differ materially from those expressed in any forward-looking statement made by us or persons acting on our behalf. Except as required by law, we undertake no duty to update or revise our forward-looking statements based on changes of internal estimates on expectations or otherwise.

## RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

## Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 vs. Three Months Ended June 30, 2016

We reported a net loss from continuing operations of \$23.1 million (\$0.22 loss per diluted share) from operating revenues of \$498.6 million for the third quarter ended June 30, 2017 compared with a net loss from continuing operations of \$21.2 million (\$0.20 loss per diluted share) from operating revenues of \$366.5 million for the third quarter of fiscal year 2016. Including discontinued operations, we recorded a net loss of \$21.8 million (\$0.21 loss per diluted share) for the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to a net loss of \$21.2 million (\$0.20 per diluted share) for the three months ended June 30, 2016. Income from continuing operations for the third quarter of fiscal 2017 includes approximately \$1.3 million (\$0.01 per diluted share) of after-tax gains from the sale of assets. The net loss for the third quarter of fiscal 2016 includes approximately \$0.3 million (less than \$0.01 per diluted share) of after-tax gains from the sale of assets.

On June 2, 2017, we completed a merger transaction ("MOTIVE Merger") pursuant to which an unaffiliated drilling technology company, MOTIVE Drilling Technologies, Inc., a Delaware corporation ("MOTIVE"), was merged with and into our wholly owned subsidiary Spring Merger Sub, Inc., a Delaware corporation. MOTIVE survived the transaction and is now a wholly owned subsidiary of the Company. At the effective time of the MOTIVE Merger, MOTIVE shareholders received aggregate cash consideration of \$74.3 million, net of customary closing adjustments, and may receive up to an additional \$25.0 million in potential earnout payments based on future performance. Transaction costs related to the MOTIVE Merger incurred during the nine months ended June 30, 2017, were \$2.8 million and are recorded in the Consolidated Statement of Operations within the general and administrative expense line item. We recorded revenue of \$1.1 million and a net loss of \$0.7 million related to the MOTIVE Merger during the three and nine months ended June 30, 2017.

The following tables summarize operations by reportable operating segment for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016. Operating statistics in the tables exclude the effects of offshore platform and international management contracts, and do not include reimbursements of "out-of-pocket" expenses in revenue, expense and margin per day calculations. Per day calculations also exclude gains and losses from translation of foreign currency transactions. Segment operating income is described in detail in Note 12 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements.

		Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2017	2016	
		s, except days y amounts)	
U.S. LAND OPERATIONS			
Operating revenues	\$405,516	\$285,028	
Direct operating expenses	277,372	122,694	
General and administrative expense	13,347	14,221	
Depreciation	122,777	116,061	
Asset impairment charge		6,250	
Segment operating income (loss)	\$ (7,980)	\$ 25,802	
Operating Statistics:			
Revenue days	16,577	7,483	
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 21,986	\$ 35,474	
Average rig expense per day	\$ 14,256	\$ 13,780	
Average rig margin per day	\$ 7,730	\$ 21,694	
Rig utilization	52 %	24 %	

The U.S. Land segment had an operating loss of \$8.0 million for the third quarter of fiscal 2017 compared to operating income of \$25.8 million in the same period of fiscal 2016. Revenues were \$405.5 million and \$285.0 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2017 and 2016, respectively. Included in U.S. land revenues for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$41.1 million and \$19.6 million, respectively. Also included in revenue for the three months ended June 30, 2017 is early termination revenue of \$5.1 million compared to \$80.7 million during the same period of fiscal 2016.

Excluding early termination per day revenue of \$310 and \$10,790 for the third quarter of fiscal 2017 and 2016, respectively, average rig revenue per day decreased by \$3,008 to \$21,676. While our activity has increased year-over-year in response to higher commodity prices, pricing for recently contracted rigs is relatively lower than the previous period and rigs with legacy term contracts at higher dayrates make up a lower proportion of our total activity due to continued contract expirations.

Average expense per day increased \$476 to \$14,256 for the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to the three months ended June 30, 2016. During the third quarter of fiscal 2017, we incurred start-up expenses related to rigs returning to work during the quarter and for rigs that commenced work in July 2017. Additionally, during the third quarter of fiscal 2016, we had a higher number of idle rigs contributing to the average rig expense per day, offset by the impact of a higher proportion of our contracted rigs on standby generating revenue days with minimal average daily expense. Excluding the impact of these factors, rigs working during the third quarter of fiscal 2017 incurred an average rig expense per day similar to rigs working in the third quarter of fiscal 2016.

Depreciation includes abandonments of \$7.7 million for the three months ended June 30, 2017. Upgrades to our rig fleet to meet customer demands for additional capabilities resulted in the abandonment of older rig components. Excluding abandonments, depreciation decreased \$1.0 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2017 compared to the third quarter of fiscal 2016. The decrease is primarily due to lower levels of capital expenditures during fiscal 2017 and 2016 and legacy assets reaching the end of their depreciable life during fiscal 2016 and 2017.

During fiscal 2017, we have experienced an increase in revenue days and utilization as rigs returned to work. U.S. land rig utilization increased to 52 percent for the third quarter of 2017 compared to 24 percent for the third quarter of fiscal 2016. U.S. land rig revenue days for the third quarter of fiscal 2017 were 16,577 compared with 7,483 for the same period of fiscal 2016, with an average of 182.2 and 82.2 rigs working, respectively. We expect rig utilization to increase in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017 due to rig additions during the third quarter of fiscal 2017.

At June 30, 2017, 190 out of 350 existing rigs in the U.S. Land segment were contracted. Of the 190 contracted rigs, 99 were under fixed term contracts and 91 were working in the spot market. As of July 27, 2017, 189 rigs were contracted in the segment. Based on current early termination notices, early termination revenue is expected to be approximately \$4.6 million during the fourth fiscal quarter of 2017.

		Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2017	2016	
	days and	(in thousands, except days and per day amounts)	
OFFSHORE OPERATIONS			
Operating revenues	\$ 33,711	\$ 30,492	
Direct operating expenses	23,656	24,249	
General and administrative expense	969	975	
Depreciation	2,630	3,184	
Segment operating income	\$ 6,456	\$ 2,084	
Operating Statistics:			
Revenue days	546	637	
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 35,644	\$ 25,568	
Average rig expense per day	\$ 24,141	\$ 18,823	
Average rig margin per day	\$ 11,503	\$ 6,745	
Rig utilization	75 %	6 78 %	

Offshore revenues include reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$5.2 million and \$5.3 million for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Average rig revenue per day and average rig margin per day increased in the third quarter of fiscal 2017 compared to the third quarter of fiscal 2016 primarily due to several rigs moving to higher pricing from previous standby or special dayrates.

At the end of June 30, 2017, six of our available eight platform rigs were contracted compared to seven of our available nine rigs being contracted at June 30, 2016.

		Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2017	2016	
	(in thousands, e and per day a		
INTERNATIONAL LAND OPERATIONS			
Operating revenues	\$ 55,075	47,983	
Direct operating expenses	35,006	38,230	
General and administrative expense	714	772	
Depreciation	14,428	13,972	
Segment operating income (loss)	\$ 4,927	(4,991)	
Operating Statistics:			
Revenue days	1,633	1,274	
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 32,708	34,693	
Average rig expense per day	\$ 19,645	26,156	
Average rig margin per day	\$ 13,063	8,537	
Rig utilization	47 %	37 %	

The International Land segment had an operating income of \$4.9 million for the third quarter of fiscal 2017 compared to an operating loss of \$5.0 million in the same period of fiscal 2016. Included in International land revenues for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$1.7 million and \$3.8 million, respectively.

In December 2016, we received early termination notification for five rigs located in our International Land segment. During the second quarter of fiscal 2017, the early termination notification was withdrawn. The customer has successfully assigned the contracts to other operators. Two of the rigs began drilling in the third quarter. The remaining three are expected to begin drilling in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017. Average rig margin per day increased \$4,526 to \$13,063 primarily due to retroactive payments related to a prior period for rigs that had been early terminated.

## RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

For the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, we incurred \$3.1 million and \$2.7 million, respectively, of research and development expenses primarily related to ongoing development of a rotary steerable system.

## **OTHER**

General and administrative expenses decreased \$3.6 million for the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to the three months ended June 30, 2016. Contributing to the decrease was expense related to an employer match to our 401k/Employee Thrift Plan due to regulatory requirements that was incurred in the third quarter of fiscal 2016.

We had an income tax benefit of \$10.5 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2017 compared to income tax expense of \$2.8 million in the third quarter of fiscal 2016 and the effective tax rate was 31.2 percent compared to -15.5 percent. The effective tax rate for the three months ended June 30, 2016 was impacted by a December 2015 tax law change which resulted in a reduction of the fiscal 2015 Internal Revenue Code Section 199 deduction for domestic production activities. We expect the effective tax rate for the remaining quarter of fiscal 2017 to be between 31 and 32 percent.

#### Nine Months Ended June 30, 2017 vs. Nine Months Ended June 30, 2016

We reported a net loss of \$105.7 million (\$0.99 loss per diluted share) from operating revenues of \$1.3 billion for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 compared with net income of \$16.0 million (\$0.13 per diluted share) from operating revenues of \$1.3 billion for the first nine months of fiscal year 2016. The net loss for the first nine months ended June 30, 2017 includes approximately \$11.9 million (\$0.11 per diluted share) of after-tax gains from the sale of assets. Net income for the first nine months of fiscal 2016 includes approximately \$4.7 million (\$0.04 per diluted share) of after-tax gains from the sale of assets.

In March 2016, the Venezuelan government implemented the previously announced plans for a new foreign currency exchange system. The implementation of this system resulted in a reported loss from discontinued operations of \$3.9 million (\$0.04 loss per diluted share) for the nine months ended June 30, 2016, all of which corresponds to the Company's former operations in Venezuela.

The following tables summarize operations by reportable operating segment for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016. Operating statistics in the tables exclude the effects of offshore platform and international management contracts, and do not include reimbursements of "out-of-pocket" expenses in revenue, expense and margin per day calculations. Per day calculations also exclude gains and losses from translation of foreign currency transactions. Segment operating income is described in detail in Note 12 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements.

	Nine Month	Nine Months Ended June 30,		
	2017	2016		
	•	(in thousands, except days and per day amounts)		
U.S. LAND OPERATIONS				
Operating revenues	\$1,000,119	\$1,004,116		
Direct operating expenses	686,227	460,119		
General and administrative expense	37,562	38,790		
Depreciation	367,048	355,102		
Asset impairment charge		6,250		
Segment operating income (loss)	\$ (90,718	\$ 143,855		
Operating Statistics:				
Revenue days	39,527	29,029		
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 22,902	\$ 32,251		
Average rig expense per day	\$ 14,942	\$ 13,532		
Average rig margin per day	\$ 7,960	\$ 18,719		
Rig utilization	42	% 31 %		

The U.S. Land segment had an operating loss of \$90.7 million for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 compared to operating income of \$143.9 million in the same period of fiscal 2016. Revenues were \$1.0 billion in both the first nine months of fiscal 2017 and 2016. Included in U.S. land revenues for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$94.9 million and \$67.9 million, respectively. Also included in revenue for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 is early termination revenue of \$19.9 million compared to \$189.2 million during the same period of fiscal 2016.

Excluding early termination per day revenue of \$503 and \$6,517 for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 and 2016, respectively, average rig revenue per day decreased by \$3,335 to \$22,399. Pricing for recently contracted rigs is relatively lower than the previous period and rigs with legacy term contracts at higher dayrates make up a lower proportion of our total activity due to continued contract expirations.

Average expense per day increased \$1,410 to \$14,942 for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 compared to the same period ended June 30, 2016. During fiscal 2017, we incurred significant start-up expenses related to rigs returning to work during the year. Additionally, during the nine months ended June 30, 2016, we had a higher number of idle rigs contributing to the average rig expense per day, offset by the impact of a higher proportion of our contracted rigs on standby generating revenue days with minimal average daily expense. Excluding the impact of these factors, rigs working during the nine months ended June 30, 2017 incurred an average rig expense per day similar to rigs working in the prior year comparative period.

Depreciation includes abandonments of \$26.8 million and \$0.7 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Upgrades to our rig fleet to meet customer demands for additional capabilities resulted in the abandonment of older rig components. Excluding abandonments, depreciation decreased \$20.4 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2017 compared to the first nine months of fiscal 2016. The decrease is primarily due to lower levels of capital expenditures during fiscal 2017 and 2016 and legacy assets reaching the end of their depreciable life during fiscal

#### Table of Contents

2016 and 2017. During the nine months ended June 30, 2016, we recorded an asset impairment charge of \$6.3 million to reduce the carrying value in used drilling equipment classified as held for sale to their estimated fair values, based on expected sales prices. The used drilling equipment is from rigs that were decommissioned from service in prior fiscal periods and written down to their estimated recoverable value at the time of decommissioning.

During fiscal 2017, we have experienced an increase in revenue days and utilization as rigs returned to work. U.S. land rig utilization increased to 42 percent for the first nine months of 2017 compared to 31 percent for the first nine months of fiscal 2016. U.S. land rig revenue days for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 were 39,527 compared with 29,029 for the same period of fiscal 2016, with an average of 144.8 and 105.9 rigs working, respectively. We expect rig utilization to increase in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017 due to rig additions during the third quarter of fiscal 2017.

At June 30, 2017, 190 out of 350 existing rigs in the U.S. Land segment were contracted. Of the 190 contracted rigs, 99 were under fixed term contracts and 91 were working in the spot market. As of July 27, 2017, 189 rigs were contracted in the segment. Based on current early termination notices, early termination revenue is expected to be approximately \$4.6 million during the fourth fiscal quarter of 2017.

	- 1	Nine Months Ended June 30,	
	2017 (in thousands	2016	
	and per da		
OFFSHORE OPERATIONS			
Operating revenues	\$103,758	\$106,697	
Direct operating expenses	72,524	81,607	
General and administrative expense	2,787	2,674	
Depreciation	9,295	9,311	
Segment operating income	\$ 19,152	\$ 13,105	
Operating Statistics:	<u> </u>		
Revenue days	1,785	2,064	
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 34,204	\$ 27,086	
Average rig expense per day	\$ 23,300	\$ 19,721	
Average rig margin per day	\$ 10,904	\$ 7,365	
Rig utilization	77 %	84 %	

Offshore revenues include reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$15.7 million and \$17.7 million for the first nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Average rig revenue per day and average rig margin per day increased in the first nine months of fiscal 2017 compared to the first nine months of fiscal 2016 primarily due to several rigs moving to higher pricing from previous standby or special dayrates.

At the end of June 30, 2017, six of our available eight platform rigs were contracted compared to seven of our available nine rigs being contracted at June 30, 2016.

	Nine Months Ended June 30,
	2017 2016
	(in thousands, except day and per day amounts)
INTERNATIONAL LAND OPERATIONS	
Operating revenues	\$157,863 \$171,529
Direct operating expenses	120,537 140,351
General and administrative expense	2,303 2,377
Depreciation	40,248 42,725
Segment operating loss	\$ (5,225) \$ (13,924
Operating Statistics:	
Revenue days	3,660 3,992
Average rig revenue per day	\$ 41,134 \$ 39,382
Average rig expense per day	\$ 30,328 \$ 29,050
Average rig margin per day	\$ 10,806 \$ 10,332
Rig utilization	35 % 38

The International Land segment had an operating loss of \$5.2 million for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 compared to an operating loss of \$13.9 million in the same period of fiscal 2016. Included in International land revenues for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 are reimbursements for "out-of-pocket" expenses of \$7.3 million and \$14.3 million, respectively. Included in revenue for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 is early termination revenue of \$4.7 million.

Excluding early termination per day revenue of \$1,292 in the first nine months of fiscal 2017, average rig revenue per day increased by \$460 to \$39,842 primarily due to a rig being on a standby rate during fiscal 2016 compared to a higher working rate in fiscal 2017. Low oil prices during 2016 and 2017 continue to have a negative effect on customer spending. During the first nine months of fiscal 2017, an average of 13.4 rigs worked compared to an average of 14.6 rigs in the first nine months of fiscal 2016.

In December 2016, we received early termination notification for five rigs located in our International Land segment. During the second quarter of fiscal 2017, the early termination notification was withdrawn. The customer has successfully assigned the contracts to other operators. Two of the rigs began drilling in the third quarter. The remaining three are expected to begin drilling in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017.

## RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT

For the nine months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, we incurred \$8.6 million and \$7.9 million, respectively, of research and development expenses primarily related to ongoing development of a rotary steerable system.

## **OTHER**

General and administrative expenses decreased \$1.7 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 compared to the nine months ended June 30, 2016. The decrease is primarily due to expense incurred in fiscal 2016 related to an employer match to our 401k/Employee Thrift Plan due to regulatory requirements that was not incurred in fiscal 2017.

We had an income tax benefit of \$50.5 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2017 compared to income tax expense of \$33.7 million in the first nine months of fiscal 2016 and the effective tax rate was 32.3 percent compared to 62.9 percent. The effective tax rate for the nine months ended June 30, 2016 was impacted by a December 2015 tax law change which resulted in a reduction of the fiscal 2015 Internal Revenue Code Section 199 deduction for domestic production activities. We expect the effective tax rate for fiscal 2017 to be between 32 and 33 percent.

## LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

#### Liquidity

Cash and cash equivalents decreased to \$572.8 million at June 30, 2017 from \$905.6 million at September 30, 2016. The following table provides a summary of cash flows:

	- 1	Nine Months Ended June 30,	
	2017	2016	
	(in tho	usands)	
Net cash provided (used) by:			
Operating activities	\$ 236,134	\$ 615,410	
Investing activities	(348,578)	(211,022)	
Financing activities	(220,330)	(226,740)	
Increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	\$(332,774)	\$ 177,648	

## Operating activities

Cash flows from operating activities were approximately \$236.1 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2017 compared to approximately \$615.4 million for the same period ended June 30, 2016. Multiple items contributed to the change, including a net loss in fiscal 2017 compared to net income in 2016, unfavorable changes in the deferred income tax liability, and less favorable net changes in current assets and current liabilities during the nine months ended June 30, 2017 compared to the same period in fiscal 2016.

#### Investing activities

Capital expenditures during the nine months ended June 30, 2017 were \$300.3 million compared to \$219.5 million during the nine months ended June 30, 2016. While there has been a reduction in the number of new rigs built during the comparative periods, there has been significant investment in upgrading existing rigs to meet specification requirements in highest demand in the market. During the third quarter of fiscal 2017, we paid \$70.4 million, net of cash acquired, for MOTIVE Drilling Technology, Inc., a drilling technology company.

## Financing activities

Cash used in financing activities for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 was comprised primarily of dividends paid of \$229.1 million.

## Other Liquidity

Our operating cash requirements, interest payments, dividend payments, any stock repurchases and estimated capital expenditures, including our rig upgrade construction program, for fiscal 2017 are expected to be funded through cash and cash provided from operating activities. Given current market conditions, there can be no assurance that we will generate cash flows. Our indebtedness totaled \$492.6 million at June 30, 2017, however, the debt does not mature until March 19, 2025. For additional information regarding debt agreements, refer to Note 9 of the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements.

## Backlog

Our contract drilling backlog, being the expected future revenue from both executed contracts with original terms in excess of one year and binding letters of intent for contracts of similar duration, as of June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016 was \$1.4 billion and \$1.8 billion, respectively. The decrease in backlog at June 30, 2017 from September 30, 2016 is primarily due to the revenue earned since September 30, 2016. Approximately 84.0 percent of the June 30, 2017

backlog is not reasonably expected to be filled in fiscal 2017. Included in backlog is early termination revenue expected to be recognized after the periods presented in which early termination notice was received prior to the end of the period.

The following table sets forth the total backlog by reportable segment as of June 30, 2017 and September 30, 2016, and the percentage of the June 30, 2017 backlog not reasonably expected to be filled in fiscal 2017:

Reportable Segment	, ,		, .		Percentage Not Reasonably Expected to be Filled in Fiscal 2017	
(in billions)						
U.S. Land	\$	0.9	\$	1.2	81.3 %	
Offshore		0.1		0.1	76.1 %	
International		0.4		0.5	90.8 %	
	\$	1.4	\$	1.8		

Fixed-term contracts customarily provide for termination at the election of the customer, with an early termination payment to be paid to us if a contract is terminated prior to the expiration of the fixed term. However, in some limited circumstances, such as sustained unacceptable performance by us, no early termination payment would be paid to us. Also, our customers may be unable to perform their contractual obligations. Accordingly, the actual amount of revenue earned may vary from the backlog reported. See the risk factors under "Item 1A. Risk Factors" of our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, regarding fixed term contract risk.

#### Capital Resources

During the nine months ended June 30, 2017, we completed one new FlexRig. The new FlexRig is working for an exploration and production company under a fixed-term contract, performing drilling services on a daywork contract basis. During fiscal 2017, we have been upgrading existing rigs to meet customer demands for additional capabilities.

Our capital spending estimate for fiscal 2017 is now estimated to be approximately \$400 million, and potentially higher depending on the timing of expenditures related to upgrading opportunities. This increase from our prior estimate of \$350 million is due to more rigs being upgraded than initially anticipated and higher levels of maintenance capital expenditures as a result of more rigs working than previously estimated. The revised estimate excludes the acquisition of MOTIVE Drilling Technologies, Inc. Capital expenditures were \$300.3 million and \$219.5 million for the first nine months of fiscal 2017 and 2016, respectively.

There were no other significant changes in our financial position since September 30, 2016.

## MATERIAL COMMITMENTS

Material commitments as reported in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K have not changed significantly at June 30, 2017

## CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES AND ESTIMATES

Our accounting policies and estimates that are critical or the most important to understand our financial condition and results of operations, and that require management to make the most difficult judgments, are described in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K. There have been no material changes in these critical accounting policies and estimates.

## RECENTLY ISSUED ACCOUNTING STANDARDS

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers*, which supersedes virtually all existing revenue recognition guidance. Throughout 2016 and in early 2017, additional accounting guidance was issued to clarify the not yet effective revenue recognition guidance issued in May 2014. The ASU provides for full retrospective, modified retrospective, or use of the cumulative effect method during the period of adoption. During 2017, we established an implementation team and began a detailed analysis of our contracts in place during the

retrospective period. We anticipate we will have two primary revenue streams consisting of lease and service components. The requirements in this ASU are effective during interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017. We expect to adopt this new revenue guidance utilizing the modified retrospective method of adoption in the first quarter of fiscal 2019. As we are still evaluating certain aspects of our contract drilling revenue, we are unable to quantify the impact that the new revenue standard will have on our consolidated financial statements at this time.

In August 2014, the FASB issued ASU No. 2014-15, *Presentation of Financial Statements* — *Going Concern (Subtopic 205-40): Disclosure of Uncertainties about an Entity's Ability to Continue as a Going Concern.* The guidance provides principles and definitions for management that are intended to reduce diversity in the timing and content of disclosures provided in footnotes. Under the standard, management is required to evaluate for each annual and interim reporting period whether it is probable that the entity will not be able to meet its obligations as they become due within one year after the date that financial statements are issued (or are available to be issued, where applicable). The standard is effective for annual periods ending after December 15, 2016. We do not expect the adoption of this standard to have an impact on the consolidated financial statements.

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU No. 2015-11, *Inventory (Topic 330): Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory.* This update simplifies the subsequent measurement of inventory. It replaces the current lower of cost or market test with the lower of cost or net realizable value test. Net realizable value is defined as the estimated selling prices in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal, and transportation. The new standard should be applied prospectively and is effective for annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2016 and interim periods within those annual periods, with early adoption permitted. We do not expect the adoption of this standard to have a material impact on our financial consolidated statements.

In January 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-01, Financial Instruments — Overall (Subtopic 825-10): Recognition and Measurement of Financial Assets and Financial Liabilities. The standard requires entities to measure equity investments that do not result in consolidation and are not accounted for under the equity method at fair value and recognize any changes in fair value in net income. The provisions of ASU No. 2016-01 are effective for interim and annual periods starting after December 15, 2017. At adoption, a cumulative-effect adjustment to beginning retained earnings will be recorded. We will adopt this standard on October 1, 2018. Subsequent to adoption, changes in the fair value of our available-for-sale investments will be recognized in net income and the effect will be subject to stock market fluctuations.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-02, Leases (Topic 842). ASU No. 2016-02 will require organizations that lease assets — referred to as "lessees" — to recognize on the balance sheet the assets and liabilities for the rights and obligations created by those leases. Under ASU No. 2016-02, a lessee will be required to recognize assets and liabilities for leases with lease terms of more than 12 months. Lessor accounting remains substantially similar to current GAAP. In addition, disclosures of leasing activities are to be expanded to include qualitative along with specific quantitative information. For public entities, ASU No. 2016-02 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim periods within those fiscal years. ASU No. 2016-02 mandates a modified retrospective transition method. We expect to adopt this new lease guidance utilizing the modified retrospective method of adoption in the first quarter of fiscal 2019 concurrently with ASU 2014-09. We are currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this guidance on our consolidated financial retrospective.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-09, Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting. ASU No. 2016-09 simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards as either equity or liabilities, and classification on the statement of cash flows. For public entities, ASU No. 2016-09 is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. We are currently evaluating the potential impact of adopting this guidance on our consolidated financial statements.

In June 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-13, *Financial Instruments—Credit Losses*. The ASU sets forth a "current expected credit loss" (CECL) model which requires companies to measure all expected credit losses for financial instruments held at the reporting date based on historical experience, current conditions and reasonable supportable forecasts. This replaces the existing incurred loss model and is applicable to the measurement of credit losses on

financial assets measured at amortized cost and applies to some off-balance sheet credit exposures. This standard is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2019. We are currently assessing the impact this standard will have on our consolidated financial statements and disclosures.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-15, Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments (a consensus of the Emerging Issues Task Force). The ASU is intended to reduce diversity in practice in presentation and classification of certain cash receipts and cash payments by providing guidance on eight specific cash flow issues. The ASU is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2017 and early adoption is permitted, including adoption during an interim period. We are currently assessing the impact this standard will have on our consolidated statement of cash flows.

In November 2016, the FASB issued ASU No. 2016-18, Statement of Cash Flows - Restricted Cash. The ASU requires amounts generally described as restricted cash and restricted cash equivalents be included with cash and cash equivalents when reconciling the total beginning and ending amounts for the periods shown on the statement of cash flows. We will adopt the guidance beginning October 1, 2018 applied retrospectively to all periods presented. The adoption is not expected to have a material impact on our consolidated financial position or cash flows.

In March 2017, the FASB issued ASU No. 2017-07, Compensation - Retirement Benefits (Topic 715): Improving the Presentation of Net Periodic Pension Cost and Net Periodic Postretirement Benefit Cost. ASU 2017-07 will change how employers that sponsor defined benefit pension and/or other post-retirement benefit plans present the net periodic benefit cost in the income statement. Employers will present the service cost component of net periodic benefit cost in the same income statement line item(s) as other employee compensation costs arising from services rendered during the period. Employers will present the other components of the net periodic benefit cost separately from the line item(s) that includes the service cost and outside of any subtotal of operating income, if one is presented. This standard is effective for public business entities for annual periods or any interim periods beginning after December 15, 2017, including interim periods within those periods. Early adoption is permitted. We do not expect the new guidance to have a material impact on its financial condition or results of operation.

In January 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-04, *Intangibles-Goodwill and Other (Topic 350)*. The objective of this ASU is to simplify how an entity is required to test goodwill for impairment by eliminating Step 2 from the goodwill impairment test. Step 2 measures a goodwill impairment loss by comparing the implied fair value of a reporting unit's goodwill with the carrying amount of that goodwill. Instead, under this ASU, an entity should perform its annual, or interim, goodwill impairment test by comparing the fair value of a reporting unit with its carrying amount. An entity should recognize an impairment charge for the amount by which the carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value; however, the loss recognized should not exceed the total amount of goodwill allocated to that reporting unit. Additionally, an entity should consider income tax effects from any tax deductible goodwill on the carrying amount of the reporting unit when measuring the goodwill impairment loss, if applicable. The ASU is applicable for public entities for their annual or any interim goodwill impairment tests in fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2019. The amendments should be applied on a prospective basis. Early adoption is permitted for interim or annual goodwill impairment tests performed on testing dates after January 1, 2017. We early adopted this guidance effective June 30, 2017 with no impact on our consolidated financial statements. Goodwill will be evaluated for impairment each year in our fourth fiscal quarter.

## ITEM 3. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK

For a description of our market risks, see

- Note 5 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements contained in Item 1 of Part I hereof with regard to
  equity price risk which is incorporated herein by reference;
- "Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk" in our 2016 Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on November 23, 2016;
- Note 9 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements contained in Item 1 of Part I hereof with regard to interest rate risk which is incorporated herein by reference;
- Note 15 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements contained in Item 1 of Part I hereof with regard to foreign currency exchange rate risk which is incorporated herein by reference; and

 Risk Factors in Item 1A of Part II hereof with regard to commodity price risk and foreign currency exchange risk which is incorporated herein by reference.

## ITEM 4. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES

As of the end of the period covered by this report, an evaluation was performed with the participation of our management, including the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, of the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures. Based on that evaluation, our management, including the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures were effective as of June 30, 2017 at ensuring that information required to be disclosed by us in the reports we file or submit under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 is recorded, processed, summarized and reported within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms. There have been no changes in our internal controls over financial reporting that occurred during the most recent fiscal quarter that have materially affected, or are reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal controls over financial reporting.

#### PART II. OTHER INFORMATION

#### ITEM 1. LEGAL PROCEEDINGS

Investigation by the U.S. Attorney. On November 8, 2013, the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Louisiana approved the previously disclosed October 30, 2013 plea agreement between our wholly owned subsidiary, Helmerich & Payne International Drilling Co. ("HPIDC"), and the United States Department of Justice, United States Attorney's Office for the Eastern District of Louisiana ("DOJ"). The court's approval of the plea agreement resolved the DOJ's investigation into certain choke manifold testing irregularities that occurred in 2010 at one of HPIDC's offshore platform rigs in the Gulf of Mexico. We also engaged in discussions with the Inspector General's office of the Department of the Interior ("DOI") regarding the same events that were the subject of the DOJ's investigation. Although we do not presently anticipate any further action by the DOI in this matter, we can provide no assurance as to the timing or eventual outcome of the DOI's consideration of the matter.

*Venezuela Expropriation.* Our wholly-owned subsidiaries, HPIDC and Helmerich & Payne de Venezuela, C.A. filed a lawsuit in the United States District Court for the District of Columbia on September 23, 2011 against the Bolivarian Republic of Venezuela, Petroleos de Venezuela, S.A. and PDVSA Petroleo, S.A. We are seeking damages for the taking of our Venezuelan drilling business in violation of international law and for breach of contract. While there exists the possibility of realizing a recovery, we are currently unable to determine the timing or amounts we may receive, if any, or the likelihood of recovery.

#### ITEM 1A. RISK FACTORS

Our business depends on the level of activity in the oil and natural gas industry, which is significantly impacted by the volatility of oil and natural gas prices and other factors.

Our business depends on the conditions of the land and offshore oil and natural gas industry. Demand for our services depends on oil and natural gas industry exploration and production activity and expenditure levels, which are directly affected by trends in oil and natural gas prices. Oil and natural gas prices, and market expectations regarding potential changes to these prices, significantly affect oil and natural gas industry activity.

In June 2014, oil prices reached over \$106 per barrel and then began to decline significantly during the second half of 2014 and continued to decline in 2015 closing below \$40 per barrel by December 31, 2015. During early 2016, oil prices dropped below \$30 per barrel and many of our customers announced significant reductions in their 2016 capital spending budgets. The severe decline in oil prices led to a significant decline in our active rig fleet. For example, at March 31, 2015, 179 out of an available 332 land rigs were contracted in the U.S. Land segment. In contrast, at June 30, 2016, 89 out of an available 348 land rigs were contracted in the U.S. Land segment. However, during the second half of 2016, oil prices increased (but remained below \$55 per barrel), the U.S. land active rig count increased and our customers began increasing their drilling budgets. Due to the gradual rebound in oil prices in calendar 2016 as noted

above, we had 190 out of an available 350 land rigs contracted in the U.S. Land segment at June 30, 2017. At July 27, 2017, 189 rigs were contracted in the U.S. Land segment. In the event oil prices drop again and remain depressed for a sustained period, our U.S. Land, International Land and Offshore segments may again experience significant declines in both drilling activity and spot dayrate pricing which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Oil and natural gas prices are impacted by many factors beyond our control, including:

- the demand for oil and natural gas;
- the cost of exploring for, developing, producing and delivering oil and natural gas;
- · the worldwide economy;
- expectations about future oil and natural gas prices;
- the desire and ability of The Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries ("OPEC") to set and maintain production levels and pricing;
- the level of production by OPEC and non-OPEC countries;
- the continued development of shale plays which may influence worldwide supply and prices;
- domestic and international tax policies;
- political and military conflicts in oil producing regions or other geographical areas or acts of terrorism in the U.S. or elsewhere;
- technological advances;
- the development and exploitation of alternative fuels;
- legal and other limitations or restrictions on exportation and/or importation of oil and natural gas;
- local and international political, economic and weather conditions; and
- the environmental and other laws and governmental regulations regarding exploration and development of oil and natural gas reserves.

The level of land and offshore exploration, development and production activity and the price for oil and natural gas is volatile and is likely to continue to be volatile in the future. Higher oil and natural gas prices do not necessarily translate into increased activity because demand for our services is typically driven by our customer's expectations of future commodity prices. However, a sustained decline in worldwide demand for oil and natural gas or prolonged low oil or natural gas prices would likely result in reduced exploration and development of land and offshore areas and a decline in the demand for our services, which could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

# We are subject to the political, economic and social instability risks and local laws associated with doing business in certain foreign countries.

We currently have operations in South America and the Middle East. In the future, we may further expand the geographic reach of our operations. As a result, we are exposed to certain political, economic and other uncertainties not encountered in U.S. operations, including increased risks of social unrest, strikes, terrorism, war, kidnapping of employees, nationalization, forced negotiation or modification of contracts, difficulty resolving disputes and enforcing contract provisions, expropriation of equipment as well as expropriation of oil and gas exploration and drilling rights, taxation policies, foreign exchange restrictions and restrictions on repatriation of income and capital, currency rate fluctuations, increased governmental ownership and regulation of the economy and industry in the markets in which we operate, economic and financial instability of national oil companies, and restrictive governmental regulation, bureaucratic delays and general hazards associated with foreign sovereignty over certain areas in which operations are conducted.

South American countries, in particular, have historically experienced uneven periods of economic growth, as well as recession, periods of high inflation and general economic and political instability. From time to time these risks have impacted our business. For example, on June 30, 2010, the Venezuelan government expropriated 11 rigs and associated real and personal property owned by our Venezuelan subsidiary. Prior thereto, we also experienced currency devaluation losses in Venezuela and difficulty repatriating U.S. dollars to the United States. Today, our contracts for work in foreign countries generally provide for payment in U.S. dollars. However, in Argentina we are paid in Argentine pesos. The

#### Table of Contents

Argentine branch of one of our second-tier subsidiaries then remits U.S. dollars to its U.S. parent by converting the Argentine pesos into U.S. dollars through the Argentine Foreign Exchange Market and repatriating the U.S. dollars. Estimates from published sources indicate that Argentina is a highly inflationary country, which is defined as cumulative inflation rates exceeding 100 percent in the most recent three-year period based on inflation data published by the respective governments. Regardless, all of our foreign operations use the U.S. dollar as the functional currency and local currency monetary assets and liabilities are remeasured into U.S. dollars with gains and losses resulting from foreign currency transactions included in current results of operations.

In December 2015, the Argentine peso experienced a sharp devaluation resulting in an aggregate foreign currency loss of \$9.4 million for the nine months ended June 30, 2016. Subsequent to the sharp devaluation, the Argentine peso significantly stabilized and the Argentine Foreign Exchange Market controls now places fewer restrictions on repatriating U.S. dollars. For the nine months ended June 30, 2017, we experienced aggregate foreign currency losses of \$3.3 million. However, in the future, other contracts or applicable law may require payments to be made in foreign currencies. As such, there can be no assurance that we will not experience in Argentina or elsewhere a devaluation of foreign currency, foreign exchange restrictions or other difficulties repatriating U.S. dollars even if we are able to negotiate contract provisions designed to mitigate such risks. In the event of future payments in foreign currencies and an inability to timely exchange foreign currencies for U.S. dollars, we may incur currency devaluation losses which could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Additionally, there can be no assurance that there will not be changes in local laws, regulations and administrative requirements or the interpretation thereof which could have a material adverse effect on the profitability of our operations or on our ability to continue operations in certain areas. Because of the impact of local laws, our future operations in certain areas may be conducted through entities in which local citizens own interests and through entities (including joint ventures) in which we hold only a minority interest or pursuant to arrangements under which we conduct operations under contract to local entities. While we believe that neither operating through such entities nor pursuant to such arrangements would have a material adverse effect on our operations or revenues, there can be no assurance that we will in all cases be able to structure or restructure our operations to conform to local law (or the administration thereof) on terms we find acceptable.

Although we attempt to minimize the potential impact of such risks by operating in more than one geographical area, during the nine months ended June 30, 2017, approximately 12.4 percent of our consolidated operating revenues were generated from the international contract drilling business. During the nine months ended June 30, 2017, approximately 90.0 percent of the international operating revenues were from operations in South America. Substantially all of the South American operating revenues were from Argentina and Colombia. The future occurrence of one or more international events arising from the types of risks described above could have a material adverse impact on our business, financial condition and results of operation.

#### Other risk factors

Reference is made to the risk factors pertaining to the Company's securities portfolio and current backlog of contract drilling revenue in Item 1A of Part 1 of the Company's Form 10-K for the year ended September 30, 2016. In order to update these risk factors for developments that have occurred during the first nine months of fiscal 2017, the risk factors are hereby amended and updated by reference to, and incorporation herein of Note 5 to the Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements contained in Item 1 of Part I hereof (regarding our securities portfolio) and Liquidity and Capital Resources — Backlog contained in Item 2 of Part I hereof.

Except as discussed above for the nine months ended June 30, 2017, there have been no material changes to the risk factors disclosed in Item 1A of Part 1 in our Form 10-K.

## Table of Contents

## ITEM 6. EXHIBITS

The following documents are included as exhibits to this Form 10-Q. Those exhibits below that are incorporated herein by reference are indicated as such by the information supplied in the parenthetical thereafter. If no parenthetical appears after an exhibit, the exhibit is filed or furnished herewith.

Exhibit Number	Description
2.1	Agreement and Plan of Merger dated May 22, 2017 between Helmerich & Payne, Inc., MOTIVE Drilling Technologies, Inc., Spring Merger Sub, Inc., and Shareholder Representative Services LLC.
31.1	Certification of Chief Executive Officer, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
31.2	Certification of Chief Financial Officer, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
32	Certification of Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.
101	Financial statements from the quarterly report on Form 10-Q of Helmerich & Payne, Inc. for the quarter ended June 30, 2017, filed on August 4, 2017, formatted in Extensive Business Reporting Language (XBRL): (i) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations, (ii) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss), (iii) the Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheets, (iv) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Shareholders' Equity, (v) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Cash Flows and (vi) the Notes to Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, the Registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned thereunto duly authorized.

HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC.

(Registrant)

Date: August 4, 2017 By: /S/ JOHN W. LINDSAY

John W. Lindsay, Chief Executive Officer

Date: August 4, 2017 By: <u>/S/ JUAN PABLO TARDIO</u>

Juan Pablo Tardio, Chief Financial Officer (Principal Financial Officer)

## Table of Contents

## EXHIBIT INDEX

The following documents are included as exhibits to this Form 10-Q. Those exhibits below that are incorporated herein by reference are indicated as such by the information supplied in the parenthetical thereafter. If no parenthetical appears after an exhibit, the exhibit is filed or furnished herewith.

Exhibit Number	Description
2.1	Agreement and Plan of Merger dated May 22, 2017 between Helmerich & Payne, Inc., MOTIVE Drilling
31.1	Technologies, Inc., Spring Merger Sub, Inc., and Shareholder Representative Services LLC.  Certification of Chief Executive Officer, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of
31.2	2002. Certification of Chief Financial Officer, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of
32	2002. Certification of Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as
101	Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.  Financial statements from the quarterly report on Form 10-Q of Helmerich & Payne, Inc. for the quarter ended June 30, 2017, filed on August 4, 2017, formatted in Extensive Business Reporting Language (XBRL):
	(i) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Operations, (ii) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss), (iii) the Consolidated Condensed Balance Sheets, (iv) the Consolidated
	Condensed Statements of Shareholders' Equity, (v) the Consolidated Condensed Statements of Cash Flows and (vi) the Notes to Consolidated Condensed Financial Statements.

## AGREEMENT AND PLAN OF MERGER

by and among

HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC., SPRING MERGER SUB, INC.,

MOTIVE DRILLING TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

and

SHAREHOLDER REPRESENTATIVE SERVICES LLC

Dated as of May 22, 2017

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

		Page
	Article I	
	THE MERGER	
Section 1.1 Section 1.2 Section 1.3 Section 1.4	The Merger Effects of the Merger Closing; Effective Time of the Merger Organizational Documents; Directors and Officers of the Surviving Corporation	1 2 2 2
	Article II	
	OTHER CLOSING TRANSACTIONS	
Section 2.1 Section 2.2 Section 2.3 Section 2.4 Section 2.5 Section 2.6	Conversion of Capital Stock Certain Closing Deliveries Closing Payments Exchange Procedures; Other Matters Appraisal Rights Withholding	3 4 4 5 7 8
	Article III	
	REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF THE COMPANY	
Section 3.1 Section 3.2 Section 3.3 Section 3.4 Section 3.5 Section 3.6 Section 3.7 Section 3.8 Section 3.9 Section 3.10 Section 3.11 Section 3.12 Section 3.13 Section 3.14 Section 3.15 Section 3.16 Section 3.17	Due Organization and Good Standing Organizational Documents Capitalization; Subsidiaries Authority; Binding Nature of Agreement Non-Contravention; Consents Financial Statements; Undisclosed Liabilities Absence of Certain Changes IP Rights Title to Assets; Real Property Material Contracts Compliance with Laws; Permits Claims; Orders Tax Matters Employee Benefit Plans Labor Matters Environmental Matters Insurance	8 8 8 10 11 11 12 12 15 16 18 19 19 22 24 25 25
Section 3.18	Takeover Statutes .	26
	i	

Section 3.19 Section 3.20 Section 3.21 Section 3.22 Section 3.23 Section 3.24	Customers and Suppliers Sufficiency of Assets Solvency Bank Accounts Brokers Matters Regarding Control	26 26 26 27 27 27
	Article IV	
REPR	ESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF PARENT AND MERGER SUB	
Section 4.1 Section 4.2 Section 4.3 Section 4.4 Section 4.5 Section 4.6 Section 4.7	Due Organization; Etc. Authority; Binding Nature of Agreement Non-Contravention; Consents Ownership and Operations of Merger Sub Claims; Orders Sufficient Funds Brokers	27 27 28 29 29 29 29
	Article V	
	COVENANTS AND AGREEMENTS	
Section 5.1 Section 5.2 Section 5.3 Section 5.4 Section 5.5 Section 5.6 Section 5.7 Section 5.8 Section 5.9 Section 5.10	Interim Operations of the Acquired Entities Exclusive Dealing Consents, Approvals and Filings; Other Actions Access Employee Matters Publicity; Confidentiality Indemnification; Directors' and Officers' Insurance Termination of Affiliate Contracts Treatment of Company Options Company Stockholder Approval; Information Statement; Conversion of Preferred Stock Earnout Payments	29 32 32 33 34 35 36 36 37
	Article VI	
	CONDITIONS TO THE MERGER	
Section 6.1 Section 6.2 Section 6.3	Conditions to Each Party's Obligation to Effect the Merger Conditions to Obligations of Parent and Merger Sub Conditions to Obligation of the Company	39 39 40

# Article VII

## **TERMINATION**

Section 7.1 Section 7.2	Termination Rights Effect of Termination; Procedure for Termination	41 42
	Article VIII	
	INDEMNIFICATION	
Section 8.1	Survival	42
Section 8.2	Indemnification	43
Section 8.3	Monetary Limitations	44
Section 8.4	Indemnification Procedures	45
Section 8.5	Losses; Mitigation	46
Section 8.6	Breach; Losses; Materiality Scrape	47
Section 8.7	Exclusive Remedy; Escrow Releases; Other Indemnification Matters	47
Section 8.8	Adjustments for Tax Purposes	50
	Article IX	
	TAX MATTERS	
Section 9.1	Responsibility for Filing Tax Returns	50
Section 9.2	Straddle Periods	50
Section 9.3	Tax Refunds	51
Section 9.4	Contests Related to Taxes	52
Section 9.5	Cooperation Related to Taxes	52
Section 9.6	Transfer Taxes	52
Section 9.7	Tax Sharing Agreements	53
Section 9.8	Post-Closing Actions	53
	Article X	
	STOCKHOLDER REPRESENTATIVE	
Section 10.1	Appointment	53
Section 10.2	Indemnification	54
Section 10.3	Reliance	55
Section 10.4	Interest	55
Section 10.5	Representative Expense Fund	55
	iii	

# Article XI

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

Section 11.1	Amendment	56
Section 11.2	Waiver	56
Section 11.3	Entire Agreement; Counterparts	56
Section 11.4	Applicable Law; Jurisdiction; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL	57
Section 11.5	Remedies; Specific Performance	57
Section 11.6	Payment of Expenses	58
Section 11.7	Assignability; Third-Party Rights	58
Section 11.8	Notices	58
Section 11.9	Severability	59
Section 11.10	No Other Representations and Warranties	59
Section 11.11	Construction	60
Exhibits*		
Exhibit A	Definitions	
Exhibit B	Form of Section 1.1445-2(c)(3) Certificate	
Exhibit C	Form of Letter of Transmittal	
Exhibit D	Earnout Payments	
Exhibit E	Form of Escrow Agreement	
Exhibit F	Form of Company Optionholder Surrender Form	

Schedule A Company Disclosure Schedule

Schedules\*

<sup>\*</sup> Exhibits and schedules (not otherwise attached below) will be supplementally furnished to the SEC upon request.

## AGREEMENT AND PLAN OF MERGER

This AGREEMENT AND PLAN OF MERGER (as may be amended from time to time, this "<u>Agreement</u>") is made and entered into as of May 22, 2017, by and among Helmerich & Payne, Inc., a Delaware corporation ("<u>Parent</u>"), Spring Merger Sub, Inc., a Delaware corporation and a wholly owned Subsidiary of Parent ("<u>Merger Sub</u>"), Motive Drilling Technologies, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "<u>Company</u>"), and Shareholder Representative Services LLC, a Colorado limited liability company, solely in its capacity as agent and attorney in fact for the Company Securityholders (in such capacity, the "<u>Stockholder Representative</u>" and, together with Parent, Merger Sub and the Company, the "<u>Parties</u>").

## **RECITALS**

WHEREAS, Parent desires to acquire the Company on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in this Agreement;

WHEREAS, it is proposed that, on the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in this Agreement, Merger Sub merge with and into the Company in accordance with the DGCL; and

WHEREAS, as a material inducement and a condition to Parent's and Merger Sub's willingness to enter into this Agreement, concurrently with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, the Identified Company Stockholders have entered into a Merger Support Agreement with Parent, Merger Sub and the Company (the "Merger Support Agreement"); and

WHEREAS, as a material inducement and a condition to Parent's and Merger Sub's willingness to enter into this Agreement, concurrently with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, each of Todd Benson, Joel Wilmes, Bill Chmela and Robert Maher (collectively, the "Company Management Members") has entered into an offer letter setting forth certain terms and conditions of his employment with Parent or its Affiliates, in each case, effective as of the Effective Time (collectively, the "Management Offer Letters").

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the foregoing Recitals and the representations, warranties, covenants and agreements set forth in this Agreement, and intending to be legally bound by this Agreement, the Parties agree as follows:

## ARTICLE I

## THE MERGER

Section 1.1 <u>The Merger</u>. Upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in this Agreement and in accordance with the General Corporation Law of the State of Delaware (the "<u>DGCL</u>"), at the Effective Time, Merger Sub shall be

merged with and into the Company (the "Merger"). By virtue of the Merger, at the Effective Time, the separate existence of Merger Sub shall cease, and the Company shall continue as the surviving corporation in the Merger (the "Surviving Corporation").

Section 1.2 <u>Effects of the Merger</u>. The Merger shall have the effects set forth in this Agreement and in the applicable provisions of the DGCL. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing and subject thereto, at the Effective Time, all of the property, rights, privileges, immunities, powers and franchises of the Company and Merger Sub shall vest in the Surviving Corporation, and all Liabilities and duties of the Company and Merger Sub shall become the Liabilities and duties of the Surviving Corporation, in each case, as provided under the DGCL and other applicable Law.

## Section 1.3 <u>Closing; Effective Time of the Merger.</u>

- (a) The Parties shall consummate the Merger (the "Closing") at the offices of Parent, 1437 S. Boulder Ave., Suite 1400, Tulsa, Oklahoma 74119-3623, at 10:00 a.m., Tulsa, Oklahoma time, on the third (3<sup>rd</sup>) Business Day after the satisfaction or waiver of the last of the conditions set forth in Article VI to be satisfied or waived (other than any such condition that by its nature is to be satisfied at the Closing, but subject to the satisfaction or waiver of such condition at the Closing), unless the Parent and the Company otherwise agree in writing to another place, time and date; provided, however, that neither Parent nor Merger Sub shall be required to consummate the Merger prior to June 2, 2017. For purposes of this Agreement, the "Closing Date" means the date on which the Closing actually occurs.
- (b) The Company shall file a certificate of merger that has been duly executed and acknowledged in accordance with, and in such form as required by, the relevant provisions of the DGCL (the "Certificate of Merger") with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware concurrently with the Closing. The Merger shall become effective at the time of the filing of the Certificate of Merger with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware or at such other time as may be mutually agreed in writing by Parent and the Company and set forth in the Certificate of Merger (the time as of which the Merger becomes effective, the "Effective Time").

# Section 1.4 <u>Organizational Documents; Directors and Officers of the Surviving Corporation.</u>

(a) As of the Effective Time, the certificate of incorporation of the Surviving Corporation shall be amended and restated to be the same as the certificate of incorporation of Merger Sub, as in effect immediately prior to the Effective Time, until thereafter amended as provided therein and in accordance with applicable Law, except that the name of the Surviving Corporation shall be Motive Drilling Technologies, Inc. As of the Effective Time, the bylaws of the Surviving Corporation shall be amended and restated to be the same as the bylaws of Merger Sub, as in effect immediately prior to the Effective Time, until thereafter amended as

provided therein and in accordance with applicable Law, except that the name of the Surviving Corporation shall be Motive Drilling Technologies, Inc.

(b) As of the Effective Time, (i) the directors of Merger Sub as of immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be the directors of the Surviving Corporation, and (ii) the officers of Merger Sub as of immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be the officers of the Surviving Corporation, in each case until their successors have been duly elected or appointed or until their earlier death, resignation or removal.

#### ARTICLE II

## OTHER CLOSING TRANSACTIONS

- Section 2.1 <u>Conversion of Capital Stock</u>. At the Effective Time, by virtue of the Merger and without any further action on the part of Parent, Merger Sub, the Company or any Company Stockholder:
- (a) any shares of Company Common Stock or Company Preferred Stock held in the Company's treasury or held by the Company (other than shares of Company Common Stock or Company Preferred Stock that are held in a fiduciary or agency capacity and are beneficially owned by third parties) immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be canceled and retired and shall cease to exist, and no consideration shall be delivered in exchange therefor;
- (b) any shares of Company Common Stock or Company Preferred Stock held by Parent, Merger Sub or any other wholly owned Subsidiary of Parent immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be canceled and retired and shall cease to exist, and no consideration shall be delivered in exchange therefor;
- (c) except as provided in <u>Section 2.1(a)</u> and <u>Section 2.1(b)</u>, and subject in all respects to <u>Section 2.4(a)</u> and <u>Section 2.5</u>, each share of Company Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be converted into and shall thereafter represent only the right to receive the following, which amounts shall be rounded to the nearest cent on an aggregate basis per Company Securityholder after aggregating all amounts payable in respect of all shares of Company Common Stock and all Company Options held by such Company Securityholder:
- (i) the Per-Share Portion of the Estimated Common Stock Closing Consideration, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in <u>Section 2.4(a)</u> (the aggregate amount payable under this <u>Section 2.1(c)(i)</u> the "<u>Aggregate Common Stock Closing Amount</u>");
- (ii) a contingent right to receive the Per-Share Portion of the aggregate amount of the funds held in the Indemnification Escrow Account, if any, that is released to the Company Stockholders and the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to <u>Section 8.7(c)</u>, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in <u>Section 8.7(c)</u> and the Escrow Agreement;

- (iii) a contingent right to receive the Per-Share Portion of the aggregate amount of the funds held in the Representative Expense Fund, if any, that is released to the Company Stockholders and the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to Section 10.5, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in Section 10.5; and
- (iv) a contingent right to receive the Per-Share Portion of any Earnout Payments, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in Section 5.11 and Exhibit D;
- (d) each share of Company Preferred Stock outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time, if any, shall be canceled and retired and shall cease to exist, and no consideration shall be delivered in exchange therefor; and
- (e) each share of common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, of Merger Sub outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be converted into one (1) share of common stock, \$0.01 par value, of the Surviving Corporation and shall constitute the only outstanding shares of capital stock of the Surviving Corporation as of immediately after the Effective Time.

## Section 2.2 <u>Certain Closing Deliveries.</u>

Representative;

- (a) At the Closing, the Company shall deliver to Parent and Merger Sub the following:
  - (i) the Escrow Agreement, duly executed by the Stockholder
- (ii) a resignation, effective as of the Effective Time, executed by each director of any Acquired Entity in office immediately prior to the Effective Time, in form and substance reasonably acceptable to Parent;
- (iii) a duly executed certificate issued by the Company in form and substance prescribed by Treasury Regulations Section 1.1445-2(c)(3), stating that the Company is not, and has not been during the relevant period specified in Section 897(c)(1)(ii) of the Code, a "United States real property holding corporation" within the meaning of Section 897(c) of the Code (including a form of notice to the IRS as prescribed by Treasury Regulations Section 1.897-2(h)(2), along with written authorization for Parent to deliver such form of notice to the IRS) in the form attached hereto as Exhibit B;
- (iv) the Company Board Resolutions, duly certified by the secretary or assistant secretary of the Company;
- (v) a validly issued certificate (dated not more than two (2) Business Days prior to the Closing Date) as to the good standing of each Acquired Entity in its jurisdiction of incorporation, formation or organization; and
  - (vi) the certificate contemplated by <u>Section 6.2(c)</u>.

- (b) At the Closing, Parent shall deliver to the Company the following:
  - (i) the Escrow Agreement, duly executed by Parent and the Escrow

Agent; and

(ii) the certificate contemplated by <u>Section 6.3(c)</u>.

## Section 2.3 <u>Closing Payments.</u>

- (a) <u>Payment Statement</u>. No later than two (2) Business Days prior to the Closing Date, the Company shall deliver to Parent a written statement (the "<u>Payment Statement</u>") setting forth the following:
- (i) the Company's good-faith estimate of the Estimated Common Stock Closing Consideration, including the Company's good-faith estimate of the Unpaid Company Expenses (the "Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses");
- (ii) (1) the number of shares of Company Common Stock outstanding as of immediately prior to the Effective Time, (2) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of all Company Options (as if fully vested) that are outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time, (3) the Pro Rata Share held by each Company Stockholder, (4) the Aggregate Common Stock Closing Amount, the amount thereof payable to each Company Stockholder pursuant to Section 2.1(c)(i) and the payment and account information (including wiring instructions where available) of each Company Stockholder and (5) the Aggregate Company Option Closing Amount and the amount thereof payable to each Company Optionholder pursuant to Section 5.9;
- (iii) the account of the Company to which Parent should make the payment required by the first sentence of <u>Section 5.9(d)</u>; and
- (iv) the amount and payee of all Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses payable to any third-party professional advisors to the Company, including invoices from such professional advisors for all such Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses owed thereto and wire instructions for payment thereto.

The Company shall prepare the Payment Statement in good faith and in a manner consistent with the terms of (including the definitions contained in) this Agreement.

- (b) <u>Payment of Unpaid Company Expenses</u>. At the Closing, Parent shall pay or cause to be paid to the third-party professional advisors of the Company contemplated by <u>Section 2.3(a)</u> (<u>iv</u>) the amount of Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses owed thereto as set forth in the Payment Statement.
- (c) <u>Payment of Escrow Amount</u>. At the Closing, pursuant to the Escrow Agreement, Parent shall pay or cause to be paid to the Escrow Agent, by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the applicable account set forth in the Escrow Agreement, the Initial Indemnification Escrow Amount to be held in the Indemnification Escrow Account.

## Section 2.4 <u>Exchange Procedures; Other Matters.</u>

## (a) <u>Exchange</u>.

(i) Unless earlier mailed or delivered by the Company, as soon as reasonably practicable after the Effective Time, and in any event no later than five (5) Business Days after the Closing Date, Parent or the Surviving Corporation shall mail or deliver, or cause to be mailed or delivered, to: each Company Stockholder in respect of the certificates of shares of Company Common Stock (the "Company Stock Certificates") held by such Company Stockholder or the book-entry shares representing shares of Company Common Stock ("Book-Entry Shares") held by such Company Stockholder, in each case, that were converted into the right to receive a specified cash amount or contingent rights pursuant to Section 2.1(c) (A) a letter of transmittal, substantially in the form of Exhibit C (each, a "Letter of Transmittal") and (B) instructions for use in delivering a duly executed and fully completed Letter of Transmittal to Parent and effecting the surrender of the Company Stock Certificates and Book-Entry Shares, as applicable, in exchange for the applicable specified cash amount or contingent rights under Section 2.1(b) or Section 2.1(c) (such instructions, the "Surrender Instructions").

(ii) A Company Stockholder shall not be entitled to receive any specified cash amount or any contingent right under Section 2.1(c) until such Company Stockholder has delivered to Parent a duly executed and fully completed Letter of Transmittal (and any required Form W-9 or Form W-8, duly completed and validly executed in accordance with the Surrender Instructions) and surrendered to the Surviving Corporation such Company Stockholder's Company Stock Certificates and Book-Entry Shares, as applicable, in accordance with the Surrender Instructions, subject to Section 2.4(f). Upon delivery to Parent by a Company Stockholder of a duly executed and fully completed Letter of Transmittal (and any required Form W-9 or Form W-8, duly completed and validly executed in accordance with the Surrender Instructions) and the surrender to the Surviving Corporation of such Company Stockholder's Company Stock Certificates and Book-Entry Shares, as applicable, in accordance with the Surrender Instructions, such Company Stockholder shall be entitled to receive (1) the specified cash amounts into which the shares of Common Stock formerly represented by such Company Stock Certificates or such Book-Entry Shares, as applicable, were converted under Section 2.1(c)(i), and Parent shall promptly pay, or cause to be paid, such specified cash amounts to such Company Stockholder and (2) any contingent right into which any Common Stock formerly represented by such Company Stock Certificates or such Book-Entry Shares were converted under Sections 2.1(c)(ii)-(iv); provided, however, that, for the avoidance of doubt, no Company Stockholder shall be entitled to receive any cash amount contemplated by the contingent rights set forth in Sections 2.1(c)(ii)-(iv) until such cash amounts are otherwise payable in accordance with, and which cash amounts are subject to specified contingencies set forth in, this Agreement. Until surrendered to the Surviving Corporation as set forth above, each Company Stock Certificate and each Book-Entry Share will be deemed from and after the Effective Time, for all corporate purposes, to evidence only the rights set forth in Section 2.1(c).

- (b) Transfers of Ownership. If any cash amounts are to be paid under Section 2.4(a) in accordance with Section 2.1(c) to any Person other than the Person whose name is reflected on the Company Stock Certificate, or in the Company's books and records with respect to any Book-Entry Share, surrendered in exchange therefor, it shall be a condition of the issuance or delivery thereof that (i) the Company Stock Certificate so surrendered shall be properly endorsed and the Company Stock Certificate or the Book-Entry Share shall otherwise in proper form for transfer, and (ii) the Person requesting such payment will have paid to Parent, or any agent designated by it, any transfer or other similar Taxes required by reason of the issuance of payment in any name other than that of the registered holder of the Company Stock Certificate or Book-Entry Share surrendered or established to the satisfaction of Parent or any agent designated by it that such Tax has been paid or is not payable.
- (c) No Interest With Respect to Unexchanged Company Common Stock. No interest will be paid or accrue for the benefit of any holder of Company Common Stock or otherwise with respect to any amount payable under this Agreement.
- (d) <u>No Liability or Obligation</u>. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement, no Party shall be liable or have any other obligation in respect of any other amount payable under this <u>Article II</u> for any amount properly paid to a public official pursuant to any applicable abandoned property, escheat or similar Law pursuant to its withholding rights set forth in <u>Section 2.6</u>.
- (e) No Further Ownership Rights in Company Capital Stock. All holders of Company Stock Certificates and Book-Entry Shares shall cease to have any rights as Company Stockholders from and after the Effective Time, except the specific rights set forth in Section 2.1(c), as applicable, with respect to each share of Company Common Stock evidenced thereby (or to appraisal rights as provided in Section 2.5 with respect to Dissenting Shares), and (b) at the Effective Time, the stock transfer books of the Company shall be closed with respect to all shares of Company Common Stock outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time. No further transfer of any such Company Stock Certificates or Book-Entry Shares shall be made on such stock transfer books after the Effective Time.
- (f) Lost, Stolen or Destroyed Certificates. In the event any Company Stock Certificates shall have been lost, stolen or destroyed, Parent shall pay in exchange for such lost, stolen or destroyed Company Stock Certificates, upon the making of an affidavit of that fact by the holder thereof, such amount, if any, as may be required pursuant to Section 2.1(c), as applicable; provided, however, that Parent may, in its sole discretion and as a condition precedent to the issuance thereof, require the holder of such lost, stolen or destroyed Company Stock Certificates to provide an indemnity as security against any Claim that may be made against Parent or the Surviving Corporation with respect to any Claims arising from the Company Stock Certificates alleged to have been lost, stolen or destroyed.
- Section 2.5 <u>Appraisal Rights.</u> Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in this Agreement, any share of Company Common Stock held by a holder who is entitled to demand and has made a valid demand for appraisal of such share in accordance, and complies in all respects, with Section 262 of the DGCL ("<u>Dissenting Shares</u>") shall not be converted into the right to receive the specific rights set

forth in Section 2.1(c), as applicable, but instead shall be entitled only to such rights as are granted by the DGCL to a holder of Dissenting Shares. At the Effective Time, all Dissenting Shares shall no longer be outstanding and shall automatically be canceled and shall cease to exist, and each holder of Dissenting Shares shall cease to have any rights with respect thereto, except the right to receive the "fair value" of such Dissenting Shares in accordance with Section 262 of the DGCL. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if any Dissenting Shares shall lose their status as such (through failure to perfect, waiver, effective withdrawal or otherwise), then, as of the later of the Effective Time or the date of loss of such status, each such Dissenting Share shall automatically be converted into or shall have deemed to have been, at the Effective Time, converted into, as applicable, and shall represent only, the specific rights set forth in Section 2.1(c), as applicable, following the surrender of the Company Stock Certificates or Book-Entry Shares representing such former Dissenting Shares. The Company shall give Parent prompt written notice of any written demand for appraisal pursuant to the DGCL received by the Company prior to the Effective Time and Parent shall have the right to direct all negotiations and proceedings with respect to such demands for appraisal. Prior to the Effective Time, the Company shall not make any payment, settle or offer to settle, or, in each case, agree to do any of the foregoing, with respect to any such demand without Parent's prior written consent.

Section 2.6 <u>Withholding</u>. Each of the Parent, the Company and the Surviving Corporation shall be entitled to deduct and withhold from any amounts otherwise payable pursuant to this Agreement, including all amounts payable under <u>Section 2.3</u>, <u>Section 5.9</u>, <u>Section 5.11</u> and <u>Section 8.7(c)</u>, such amounts as are required to be deducted or withheld from such consideration under the Code, the Treasury Regulations or any provision of any other Tax Law (including any state, local or foreign Tax Law). Each of the Parent, the Company and the Surviving Corporation shall take all action that may be necessary to ensure that any such amounts so withheld are promptly and properly remitted to the appropriate Governmental Entity. Any amounts so deducted and withheld shall be treated for all purposes of this Agreement as having been paid to the Person in respect of which such deduction and withholding was made.

## ARTICLE III

## REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF THE COMPANY

Except as set forth in the Company Disclosure Schedule (subject to <u>Section 11.11(k)</u>), the Company represents and warrants to Parent and Merger Sub as follows:

Section 3.1 <u>Due Organization and Good Standing</u>. Each Acquired Entity has been duly organized and is validly existing and in good standing under the Laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation, organization or formation and has all requisite corporate, limited liability company or other power and authority to own, lease and operate its properties and assets, and to conduct its businesses in the manner in which its businesses are currently being conducted. Each Acquired Entity is duly qualified to do business as a foreign corporation, and is in good standing, under the Laws of the jurisdictions where the nature of its businesses or the character of its owned and leased properties and assets requires such qualification, except where the failure to be so qualified would not be material such Acquired Entity.

Section 3.2 <u>Organizational Documents</u>. The Company has delivered or made available to Parent true, complete and correct copies of the Organizational Documents of each Acquired Entity, in each case as amended through the date of this Agreement, and each such Organizational Document is in full force and effect. No Acquired Entity is in violation of its Organizational Documents.

## Section 3.3 <u>Capitalization; Subsidiaries</u>.

- (a) The authorized capital stock of the Company consists of (i) 19,000,000 shares of Company Common Stock, of which (1) 6,708 shares were issued and outstanding as of the date of this Agreement and (2) zero (0) shares were held by the Company in its treasury as of the date of this Agreement, and (ii) 15,810,000 shares of Preferred Stock, of which (1) 15,767,151 were issued and outstanding as of the date of this Agreement, (2) 5,810,000 shares of Preferred Stock are designated as "Series A Preferred Stock" in the Company Charter, of which 5,767,151 are outstanding as of the date of this Agreement and (3) 10,000,000 shares of Preferred Stock are designated as "Series A-1 Preferred Stock" in the Company Charter and all of which are outstanding as of the date of this Agreement. As of immediately prior to the Effective Time, zero (0) shares of Company Preferred Stock will be issued or outstanding. All of the shares of Company Common Stock and Company Preferred Stock are held in certificated form.
- (b) As of the date of this Agreement, (i) 1,836,028 shares of Company Common Stock are subject to issuance pursuant to outstanding Company Options and (ii) 312,857 shares of Company Common Stock are reserved for future issuance pursuant to the Company Equity Plan. The Company has made available to Parent a true, complete and correct copy of the Company Equity Plan and the form of stock option agreement evidencing the Company Options.
- All of the issued and outstanding shares of Company Common Stock and Company Preferred Stock have been, and all shares of Company Common Stock that may be issued pursuant to the Company Options, will be, when issued in accordance with the respective terms thereof, duly authorized and validly issued, and are (or in the case of such shares of Company Common Stock not yet issued, will be) fully paid and nonassessable and free of preemptive rights created by the Company's Organizational Documents or any agreement to which the Company is a party. Except as described in Section 3.3(a) and Section 3.3(b), there are no (i) outstanding shares of capital stock or other voting securities or equity interests of the Company, (ii) outstanding subscriptions, options, calls, warrants, rights, commitments or agreements to acquire or that obligate any Acquired Entity to issue any shares of the capital stock or other equity securities or voting interests of such Acquired Entity, (iii) outstanding restricted shares, stock appreciation rights, redemption rights, repurchase rights, "phantom" stock rights, performance shares, performance units, interests in or rights to the ownership or earnings of any Acquired Entity or other equity equivalent or equity-based awards or rights or (iv) outstanding securities, instruments or obligations of any Acquired Entity that are or may become convertible into or exchangeable for any shares of the capital stock or other equity security or voting interest of such Acquired Entity (the items in clauses (i)-(iv) above, collectively, the "Company Securities"). There are no outstanding obligations of an Acquired Entity to repurchase, redeem or otherwise acquire any Company

Securities. No Acquired Entity is a party to any Contract restricting the transfer of, relating to the voting of, requiring registration of, or granting any antidilutive rights, rights of first refusal or preemptive rights of any kind which obligate any Acquired Entity to issue or deliver any Company Securities or other similar rights with respect to any Company Securities. There is no outstanding Indebtedness of an Acquired Entity having the right to vote (or convertible into or exchangeable or exercisable for securities having the right to vote) on any matters on which Company Stockholders or any equity holder of an Acquired Entity may vote.

(d) Section 3.3(d) of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists each Subsidiary of the Company, including its jurisdiction of incorporation, formation or organization, as applicable, issued and outstanding capital stock, and each record holder of its capital stock. Except for the capital stock of, or other equity or voting interests in, its Subsidiaries, the Company does not own, directly or indirectly, any equity, membership interest, partnership interest, joint venture interest or other equity or voting interest in, or any interest convertible into, exercisable or exchangeable for any of the foregoing, and none of the Acquired Entities are under any obligation to form, provide funds to or make any loan, capital contribution, guarantee, or other investment in, any Person. All of the outstanding shares of capital stock or other equity interests of each of the Company's Subsidiaries have been duly authorized and validly issued, are fully paid and nonassessable and free of preemptive rights, and are wholly owned beneficially and of record by an Acquired Entity, free and clear of any Liens. No outstanding shares of Company Common Stock or Company Preferred Stock are held by any Subsidiary of the Company.

Section 3.4 Authority; Binding Nature of Agreement. The Company has the requisite corporate power and authority to enter into, and to perform its covenants and agreements under, this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party and, subject only to (a) the adoption of this Agreement by a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of Company Common Stock and the holders of Company Preferred Stock in accordance with the Company Charter and the DGCL and (b) the approval of this Agreement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement by Hunt Energy Enterprises, L.L.C. and either Formation8 Partners Fund II, L.P. or GE Ventures Limited in accordance with the Company Charter (the foregoing clauses (a) and (b), collectively, the "Company Stockholder Approval"), to consummate the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party. The Company's board of directors has unanimously adopted resolutions (a) declaring it advisable and in the best interests of the Company Stockholders for the Company to enter into this Agreement and approving the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by the Company and the consummation by the Company of the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement, (b) directing that the adoption of this Agreement be submitted to the Company Stockholders for their consideration at a stockholders' meeting to be duly called and held and (c) resolving to recommend that the Company Stockholders adopt this Agreement (such resolutions, the "Company Board Resolutions"). Such resolutions have not been subsequently rescinded, modified or withdrawn in any way. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by the Company and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party and the consummation by the Company of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction

Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party have been duly and validly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of the Company, and no other corporate proceedings on the part of the Company are necessary to authorize this Agreement or each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party, the performance by the Company of its covenants and agreements under this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party or the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party, except for the Company Stockholder Approval and the filing of the Certificate of Merger with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware. This Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party has been or will be, as applicable, duly and validly executed and delivered on behalf of the Company and, assuming the due authorization, execution and delivery of this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party by the other parties thereto, constitutes a legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, subject to (i) Laws of general application relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other Laws affecting creditors' rights generally and (ii) rules of law governing specific performance, injunctive relief and other equitable remedies.

## Section 3.5 Non-Contravention; Consents.

- (a) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party, by the Company and the consummation by the Company of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party does not and will not (i) contravene, conflict with or result in any violation or breach of any of the provisions of the Organizational Documents of any Acquired Entity, (ii) subject to making or obtaining, as applicable, the Consents and Filings set forth in Section 3.5(b), contravene, conflict with or result in any violation or breach of any Law or (iii) require any consent, approval or authorization of (each, a "Consent"), or any notice to or filing with (each, a "Filing"), any Person other than a Party with respect to, result in any breach or violation of, constitute a default (or an event which with or without notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, result in the loss of a benefit or result in the imposition of an obligation under, or give rise to any right of termination, cancellation or amendment of any Person or any acceleration of any right of any Person or of any obligation of any Person under, any Contract to which an Acquired Entity is a party or any Permit to which an Acquired Entity is subject, except for such Consents or Filings which, if not obtained or made, would not be material to any Acquired Entity and would not prevent, materially alter or materially delay the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.
- (b) No Acquired Entity is required to make any Filing with or to, or to obtain any Consent from, any Governmental Entity in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, or any Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party, by the Company or the performance and consummation by the Company of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any Other Transaction Agreement to which the Company is or will be a party, except for the Filing of the Certificate of Merger with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware.

## Section 3.6 Financial Statements; Undisclosed Liabilities.

- (a) Section 3.6(a) of the Company Disclosure Schedule sets forth (i) the unaudited consolidated balance sheet of the Acquired Entities as of April 30, 2017 (the "Latest Balance Sheet"), and the related statements of income for the four (4)-month period then ended, and (ii) the unaudited consolidated balance sheet of the Acquired Entities as of December 31, 2016 and December 31, 2015, and the related statements of income for the years then ended (all such financial statements referred to in the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), the "Financial Statements"). The Financial Statements fairly present, in all material respects, the consolidated financial position of the Acquired Entities as at the respective dates thereof and the consolidated results of operations of the Acquired Entities for the respective periods covered thereby in accordance with GAAP applied on a consistent basis throughout the periods covered (except as may be indicated in the notes to such financial statements or, in the case of unaudited statements, subject to the absence of notes not required by GAAP and normal year-end adjustments).
- (b) No Acquired Entity has any Liabilities, except for (i) Liabilities accrued or disclosed in the Latest Balance Sheet, (ii) Liabilities incurred since the date of the Latest Balance Sheet Date in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practice, (iii) Liabilities incurred in connection with this Agreement, the Other Transaction Agreements and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Other Transaction Agreement, (iv) Liabilities which are not required to be accrued or disclosed in the Financial Statements in accordance with GAAP or (v) Liabilities that are not or would not reasonably be expected to be material to the Acquired Entities, taken as a whole.
- (c) <u>Section 3.6(c)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule sets forth the principal amount of all Indebtedness of the Acquired Entities.
- Section 3.7 <u>Absence of Certain Changes</u>. Since the Latest Balance Sheet Date, (a) each Acquired Entity has conducted its businesses in all material respects only in accordance with the ordinary course of such businesses consistent with past practices, (b) there has not occurred a Material Adverse Effect and (c) no Acquired Entity has taken any action that, if taken after the date of this Agreement, would require Parent's prior written consent under <u>Section 5.1</u>.

## Section 3.8 <u>IP Rights</u>.

- (a) Except with respect to any claim that the conduct of the businesses of each Acquired Entity, including any product or service marketed, used, licensed, sold, or otherwise provided by such Acquired Entity, has infringed, misappropriated or otherwise violated, or does infringe, misappropriate or otherwise violate, any IP Rights (excluding therefrom any copyrights or trade secrets) owned by any other Person, each Acquired Entity owns, or has valid rights to use, all IP Rights that are being used in, or are necessary for, the conduct of its businesses in the manner in which they are currently being conducted.
- (b) <u>Section 3.8(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists all (i) issued patents and patent applications (published or unpublished), (ii) trademark registrations and

applications and material unregistered trademarks, (iii) domain names, and (iv) copyright registrations and applications, in each case which is owned or exclusively licensed to an Acquired Entity in any jurisdiction in the world. Except as otherwise set forth in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule, an Acquired Entity is the sole and exclusive beneficial and, with respect to applications and registrations (including patents), record owner of all of the IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule. All registered trademarks, registered service marks, patents and registered copyrights owned by any Acquired Entity are, to the Company's Knowledge, valid and enforceable, and are subsisting.

- (c) Each Acquired Entity has recorded with the appropriate Governmental Entities, to the extent required by applicable Law, all assignments and any other documentation necessary to establish ownership in it of all rights, title and interest in and to any of the Acquired Entity-owned IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule to which such Acquired Entity has acquired rights from its employees, Affiliates or third parties.
- (d) Each Acquired Entity is not bound by any policies or agreements under which any of the IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule have been or will be assigned to anyone other than the Acquired Entity. Each Acquired Entity has good, clear record and title to all of the Acquired Entity-owned IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule, free and clear of all Liens other than Permitted Liens.
- (e) There is no agreement in effect pursuant to which any Acquired Entity has granted any license, right or authority under any of the Acquired Entity-owned IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule to any Person, nor has any Acquired Entity extended any covenant not to sue under such IP Rights listed in Section 3.8(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule to any Person, except for such non-exclusive licenses granted in the ordinary course of the Company's business.
- (f) Except as set forth in <u>Section 3.8(f)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule, each Acquired Entity has not sought, applied for or received any support, funding, resources or assistance from any Governmental Entity in connection with the development, conception or reduction to practice of the Acquired Entity-owned IP Rights listed in <u>Section 3.8(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule or the inventions claimed therein.
- (g) Except for the licensed IP Rights as set forth in <u>Section 3.8(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule, there is no information known to any Acquired Entity that would preclude it from owning the Acquired Entity-owned IP Rights listed in <u>Section 3.8(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule.
- (h) To the Company's Knowledge, there are no Orders that affect the ownership, validity, enforceability or subsistence of the IP Rights listed in <u>Section 3.8(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule.
- (i) To the Company's Knowledge as to (i) and (ii) only, (i) the conduct of the businesses of each Acquired Entity, including any product or service marketed,

used, licensed, sold, or otherwise provided by such Acquired Entity, has not infringed, misappropriated or otherwise violated, and does not infringe, misappropriate or otherwise violate, any IP Rights owned by any other Person, (ii) no Person is infringing, misappropriating or otherwise violating any IP Rights owned by any Acquired Entity, and (iii) each Acquired Entity has taken reasonable steps to protect its IP Rights and to maintain the confidentiality of its trade secrets. No Claim is pending or in the past three (3) years was pending or threatened, (1) against any Acquired Entity that is based upon any Claim that such Acquired Entity is or was infringing any IP Rights owned by any other Person or challenging the validity, enforceability or ownership of, or the right to use, any IP Rights owned by any Acquired Entity or (2) by any Acquired Entity against any other Person that is or was based upon any Claim that another Person is infringing any IP Rights owned by such Acquired Entity.

Each Acquired Entity has at all times complied with all applicable Laws, as well as its own rules, policies, and procedures, relating to privacy, data protection, and the collection and use of personal information collected, used, or held for use by any Acquired Entity. No Claim has been asserted or threatened against any Acquired Entity alleging a violation of any Person's privacy or personal information or data rights and the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement will not breach or otherwise cause any violation of any Laws or rule, policy or procedure related to privacy, data protection or the collection and use of personal information collected, used or held for use by or on behalf of any Acquired Entity in the conduct of its businesses. Each Acquired Entity takes reasonable measures to ensure that such information is protected against unauthorized access, use, modification, or other misuse. Each Acquired Entity also takes reasonable measures to ensure the confidentiality, integrity and availability of all such information in electronic format and protect against reasonably anticipated threats or hazards to the security of such information and the unauthorized use or disclosure of such information. Except with respect to Contracts concerning commercially available shrink-wrap or off-theshelf software, or online software-as-a-service offerings that in each case have an acquisition price of less than \$10,000 per unit or per year and "open source" or similar licenses, and except as set forth in Section 3.8(j) of the Company Disclosure Schedule, only employees acting within the scope of their employment by any Acquired Entity or contractors acting pursuant to a signed, written agreement with an Acquired Entity, have authored any software or other copyrightable works used by any Acquired Entity to provide services or as a product of an Acquired Entity. In each case, an Acquired Entity has a signed, written agreement with each such employee and contractor that (i) provides for ownership of all IP Rights in and to such software or works by an Acquired Entity and transfers any Acquired Entity such ownership of IP Rights; and (ii) imposes obligations of confidentiality on such employee and contractor with respect to such software or other works as are reasonable and customary for companies such as the Company, and that such confidentiality obligations continue to apply after termination of the employment or contractor relationship as set forth therein.

(k) Except with respect to Contracts concerning commercially available shrink-wrap or off-the-shelf software, or online software-as-a-service offerings that in each case have an acquisition price of less than \$10,000 per unit or per year, Section 3.8(k) of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists all software owned by any Acquired Entity, or used or held for use in the business of any Acquired Entity that in either case is material to the business of the Company or the operation thereof, indicating in each instance whether such software is owned

by an Acquired Entity or licensed for use from a third party. With respect to the use of software in the businesses of an Acquired Entity, (i) no capital expenditures are necessary with respect to such use other than capital expenditures in the ordinary course of business consistent with the past practices of such Acquired Entity, and (ii) no Acquired Entity has, to the Company's Knowledge, experienced any material defects in such software, including any material error or omission in the processing of any transactions other than defects which have been corrected. During the three (3) years prior to the date of this Agreement, to the Company's Knowledge, (1) there have been no material security breaches in any Acquired Entity's information technology systems, and (2) there have been no disruptions in any Acquired Entity's information technology systems that materially adversely affected such Acquired Entity's businesses or operations. Each Acquired Entity has evaluated its disaster recovery and backup needs and has implemented plans and systems that reasonably address its assessment of risk. With respect to the software used or held for use in the businesses of an Acquired Entity, to the Company's Knowledge, (1) no such software contains any device or feature or illicit code designed to disrupt, disable, or otherwise impair the functioning of any software, or allow anyone to bypass security features or transfer or obtain data or control of data, (2) no Acquired Entity has delivered, licensed or made available, and no Acquired Entity has any duty or obligation (whether present, contingent, or otherwise) to deliver, license or make available, the source code for any such software to any escrow agent or other Person who is not, as of the date of this Agreement, an employee of any Acquired Entity, and (3) with respect to Acquired Entity-owned software, no such software contains or is used with third party code that is subject to the terms of any "open source" or other similar license that provides for any source code of the Acquired Entity-owned or third party software (other than "open source" software) to be disclosed, licensed, distributed, or otherwise provided or made available to anyone.

(l) The consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement will not result in the loss or impairment of or payment of any additional amounts with respect to, nor require the consent of any other Person in respect of, any Acquired Entity's right to own, use or hold for use any of the IP Rights as owned, used or held for use in the conduct of its businesses.

# Section 3.9 <u>Title to Assets; Real Property.</u>

- (a) Each Acquired Entity owns, and has good and valid title to, all tangible personal property used or held for use in its businesses, free and clear of any Lien (other than any Permitted Lien).
  - (b) No Acquired Entity owns any real property.
- (c) <u>Section 3.9(c)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists the addresses and the names of the fee owners, landlords, tenants, subtenants and sub-subtenants, as applicable, of each real property leased, sub-subleased, licensed or otherwise occupied by an Acquired Entity (the "<u>Leased Real Property</u>" and, together with the Owned Real Property, collectively, the "<u>Real Property</u>"), as well as any and all leases, subleases, sub-subleases, licenses, occupancy agreements, and purchase options thereunder, and all amendments, terminations and modifications thereof (collectively, the "<u>Real Estate Leases</u>").

An Acquired Entity has a valid leasehold interest in, and enjoys actual, exclusive, peaceful and undisturbed possession of, the relevant Leased Real Property, in each case free and clear of any Lien (other than Permitted Liens). There are no leases, subleases, licenses, occupancy agreements, options, rights or other agreements or arrangements to which any Acquired Entity is a party granting to any Person the right to use, occupy or otherwise obtain a real property interest in all or any portion of a Leased Real Property.

- (d) The Leased Real Property is in material compliance with all Laws related to the business currently being conducted on such Leased Real Property. Each Acquired Entity is in material compliance with all Liens and other matters of record affecting the Leased Real Property, and no Acquired Entity has received any written notice alleging any default under any of such Liens or other matters of record.
- (e) Except as provided by the Real Estate Leases, there are no outstanding Contracts, commitments, options, rights of reverter or rights of first refusal (i) to which any Acquired Entity is a party or (ii) to the Company's Knowledge, to which any landlord or sub-landlord, as applicable, and parties other than an Acquired Entity, are a party, in each case, granted to third parties to purchase or lease any Leased Real Property, or any portion thereof or interest therein.

## Section 3.10 Material Contracts.

- (a) <u>Section 3.10</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists, as of the date of this Agreement, each Contract described below to which any Acquired Entity is a party or by which any Acquired Entity is bound other than Company Plans (each, a "<u>Material Contract</u>"):
- (i) any Contract (other than Contracts in which the sole parties are Acquired Entities) with respect to a joint venture, partnership, limited liability company or other similar agreement or arrangement, related to the formation, creation, operation, management or control of any partnership, joint venture or limited liability company;
- (ii) any Contract relating to Indebtedness, any obligation to purchase, redeem, retire, defease or otherwise acquire for value any capital stock or any warrants, rights or options to acquire such capital stock;
- (iii) any Contract relating to an acquisition, divestiture, merger or similar transaction that contains representations, covenants, indemnities or other obligations (including payment, indemnification, "earnout" or other contingent obligations) that are in effect on the date of this Agreement;
- (iv) any Contract, other than a Contract related to an acquisition subject to <u>Section 3.10(a)(iii)</u>, that obligates any Acquired Entity to make any capital commitment or expenditure (including pursuant to any joint venture) in excess of \$100,000;
- (v) any Contract that prohibits the payment of dividends or distributions in respect of the Company Securities or otherwise, prohibits the pledging of the Company Securities or prohibits the issuance of guarantees by any Acquired Entity;

- (vi) any Contract containing any covenant limiting or prohibiting the right of any Acquired Entity (1) to engage in any line of business or conduct business in any geographic area, (2) to distribute or offer any products or services or (3) to compete with any other Person in any line of business or in any geographic area or levying a fine, charge or other payment for doing any of the foregoing;
- (vii) any Contract that grants any right of first refusal, right of first offer or similar right with respect to any material assets, rights or properties of any Acquired Entity;
- (viii) any Contract that would reasonably be expected to involve payments by or to any Acquired Entity in excess of \$100,000 during the twelve (12) month period after the date of this Agreement, excluding salary payments to employees;
  - (ix) any material Contract with any Governmental Entity;
- (x) any Contract pursuant to which any of the benefits thereunder, to any Acquired Entity or to any other party thereto, will be increased, or the vesting of benefits of which will be accelerated, by the consummation of the Merger or the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the value of any of the benefits of which will be calculated on the basis of any of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement;
- (xi) any Contract (1) relating to the employment of, or the performance of services by, any director, employee or consultant that requires payment of base salary (or compensation) in excess of \$100,000 on an annual basis to any Person, (2) the terms of which obligate or may in the future obligate any Acquired Entity to make any severance, termination or similar payment to any current or former employee or (3) pursuant to which any Acquired Entity may be obligated to make any bonus or similar payment in excess of \$50,000 to any current or former employee or director;
  - (xii) any Real Estate Lease;
  - (xiii) any Collective Bargaining Agreement;
- (xiv) any Contract pursuant to which any Acquired Entity has received from any other Person rights to exploit any IP Rights that are being used in, or are necessary for, the conduct of such Acquired Entity's businesses, excluding (1) Contracts concerning commercially available shrink-wrap or off-the-shelf software, or online software-as-a-service offerings that in each case have an acquisition price of less than \$10,000 per unit or per year, (2) "open source" or similar licenses, and (3) routine licenses to pre-existing works contained in employee or independent contractor agreements;
- (xv) any Contract with (1) any Company Stockholder or any Affiliate (other than any Acquired Entity), director, manager or officer of any Acquired Entity or (2) any Affiliate of, or any "associate" or any member of the "immediate family" (as such terms are defined in Rules 12b-2 and 16a-1 under the Exchange Act) of, any such Company Stockholder or any such Affiliate, director, manager or officer (each such Contract, collectively, the "Affiliate Contracts");

(xvi) any Contract obligating an Acquired Entity to purchase or otherwise obtain any product or service exclusively from any Person or sell any product or service exclusively to any Person;

(xvii) any Contract relating to leases of equipment, vehicles or other personal property that, in each case, is material to any Acquired Entity;

(xviii) any stockholders, investors rights, registration rights or similar agreement or arrangement;

(xix) any Contract under which an Affiliate of an Acquired Entity (without treating the Acquired Entities as Affiliates of each other) has an obligation to indemnify a counterparty thereto;

(xx) any Contract with a Customer pursuant to which the Acquired Entity provides, or, since December 31, 2016, has provided, products or services (each such Contract, a "Customer Contract");

(xxi) any Contract with a Supplier pursuant to which the Supplier provides, or, since December 31, 2016, has provided products or services that are material to the businesses of the Acquired Entities, taken as a whole; and

(xxii) any Contract under which any Person provides marketing, advertising or sales services to any Acquired Entity.

- (b) Prior to the date of this Agreement, the Company has made available to Parent true, complete and correct copies of each Material Contract (including all exhibits and schedules thereto).
- (c) Each Material Contract is in full force and effect and is the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Acquired Entity party thereto and the other parties thereto, enforceable against each of them in accordance with its terms, subject to (i) Laws of general application relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other Laws affecting creditors' rights generally and (ii) rules of law governing specific performance, injunctive relief and other equitable remedies. No Acquired Entity is in material breach of or in material default under any Material Contract, and, to the Company's Knowledge, no other party to any Material Contract is in material breach of or material default thereunder, and no event has occurred that with notice or lapse of time or both would constitute a material breach or material default of the Acquired Entity party thereto or any other party thereto. No party to any Material Contract has provided notice to any other party requesting any indemnification or defense under such Material Contract. No party to any Material Contract has provided written notice exercising any termination rights with respect thereto, and no party to any of the Material Contracts has given written notice of any material dispute with respect to any Material Contract or any intent to terminate, adversely modify, not renew or challenge the validity or enforceability of any Material Contract.

# Section 3.11 <u>Compliance with Laws; Permits.</u>

- (a) Each Acquired Entity is, and since January 1, 2014 has been, in compliance in all material respects with all applicable Laws. Since January 1, 2014, no Acquired Entity has received any written or, to the Company's Knowledge, oral communication from any Governmental Entity alleging or asserting that any Acquired Entity is not in compliance in any material respect with any Laws. To the Company's Knowledge, no Governmental Entity is conducting, and since January 1, 2014 no Governmental Entity has conducted, any investigation into any Acquired Entity's potential noncompliance in a material respect with any applicable Law. This Section 3.11(a) does not apply to Tax matters, which are addressed in Section 3.13.
- (b) Each Acquired Entity holds all material Permits necessary for the lawful conduct of its business as it is currently being conducted. Such Permits are valid and in full force and effect. Each Acquired Entity is in material compliance with the terms and requirements of such Permits. No Acquired Entity has received any written notice from any Governmental Entity (and to the Company's Knowledge, no Governmental Entity has threatened any notice) (i) asserting any material violation of any term or requirement of any such Permit, (ii) notifying any Acquired Entity of the revocation or withdrawal of any such Permit or (iii) imposing any condition, modification or amendment on any such Permit, in each case that has not been cured or waived.
- Section 3.12 <u>Claims; Orders</u>. There is no material Claim pending (or, to the Company's Knowledge, being threatened) against any Acquired Entity or any present or former executive officer, director or manager of any Acquired Entity in his or her capacity as such. There is no material Order outstanding against any Acquired Entity or any present or, to the Company's Knowledge, former officer or director of any Acquired Entity in his or her capacity as such or to which any of the foregoing is subject. This <u>Section 3.12</u> does not apply to Tax matters, which are addressed in <u>Section 3.13</u>.

# Section 3.13 Tax Matters.

- (a) The Acquired Entities have timely filed with the appropriate Taxing Authority, or have caused to be timely filed on their behalf (taking into account any extension of time within which to file), all income and other material Tax Returns required by Law to be filed by them, and all such filed Tax Returns are true, correct and complete in all material respects. Except as set forth in Section 3.13(a) of the Disclosure Schedule, no Acquired Entity is currently the beneficiary of any extension of time within which to file any Tax Return (other than statutory automatic extensions).
- (b) Section 3.13(b) of the Company Disclosure Schedule sets forth an accurate and complete list of all federal, state, local and foreign income Tax Returns filed with respect to the Acquired Entities for taxable periods ended on or after January 1, 2013, indicates those income Tax Returns that have been audited, and indicates those Tax Returns that currently are the subject of audit. The Acquired Entities has made available to Parent accurate copies of all federal income Tax Returns, examination reports, and statements of deficiencies assessed against or agreed to by any Acquired Entity filed or received since January 1, 2013.
- (c) All income and other material Taxes due and payable by or with respect to the Acquired Entities, whether or not shown to be due on any Tax Return, have been

timely paid in full. With respect to any period for which Tax Returns have not yet been filed or for which Taxes are not yet due or payable, the Acquired Entities have made accruals in accordance with GAAP for such Taxes on the Latest Balance Sheet. All required estimated Tax payments sufficient to avoid any underpayment penalties or interest have been made by or on behalf of the Acquired Entities.

- (d) All Taxes required to have been withheld and paid by the Acquired Entities under applicable Law, including in connection with amounts paid or owing to any employee, independent contractor, creditor, shareholder or other third party, have been timely withheld and paid to the appropriate Taxing Authority, and all IRS Forms W-2 and 1099 and other applicable forms required with respect thereto have in all material respects been properly completed and timely filed.
- (e) No deficiency with respect to Taxes has been proposed, asserted or assessed in writing against any Acquired Entity which has not been fully paid or reserved for in accordance with GAAP on the Financial Statements.
- (f) There is no audit, claim or assessment pending, proposed in writing, asserted or threatened in writing against or with respect to any Acquired Entity by any Taxing Authority in respect of any Tax or Tax Return, and no Taxing Authority has indicated in writing an intent to investigate, commence or open such an audit, claim or assessment with respect to any such Tax or Tax Return.
- (g) No Acquired Entity (i) is or has been a member of a group filing an affiliated, consolidated, combined or unitary Tax Return other than those for which the Company was the common parent, nor has any Acquired Entity been included in any similar arrangement for relief under applicable Law, such as a loss sharing regime, other than those for which the Company was the common parent, or (ii) has any liability for Taxes of any other Person (other than an Acquired Entity) under Treasury Regulations Section 1.1502-6 (or any analogous, comparable or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law) or as a transferee or successor under any provision of applicable Law, or by Contract.
- (h) No Acquired Entity will be required to include any material item of income in, or exclude any material item of deduction from, taxable income for any taxable period (or portion thereof) beginning after the Closing Date as a result of any (i) change in method of Tax accounting made prior to the Closing, (ii) "closing agreement" as described in Section 7121 of the Code (or any analogous, comparable or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law) entered into prior to the Closing, (iii) deferred intercompany gain or excess loss account described in Section 1502 of the Code (or any analogous, comparable or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law) resulting from a transaction consummated prior to the Closing, (iv) installment sale or open transaction disposition consummated prior to the Closing, (v) prepaid amount received prior to the Closing, other than in the ordinary course of business or (vi) election under Section 108(i) of the Code (or any analogous, comparable or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law) made prior to the Closing.
- (i) No Acquired Entity is a party to, is bound by or has any obligation under any Tax Sharing Agreement.

- (j) No Acquired Entity has distributed stock of another Person, or has had its stock distributed by another Person, in a transaction that was purported or intended to be governed in whole or in part by Section 355 of the Code or Section 361 of the Code (or any analogous, comparable or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law).
- (k) No closing agreements (as described in Section 7121 of the Code or any corresponding, analogous or similar provision of state, local or foreign Law), private letter rulings, technical advice memoranda or similar agreements or rulings have been entered into or requested by or with respect to any Acquired Entity.
- (l) Each Acquired Entity has in its possession official foreign government receipts for any Taxes paid by it to any foreign Taxing Authority.
- (m) Each Acquired Entity is in compliance in all material respects with Tax exemption, Tax holiday or other Tax reduction agreement or order to which any Acquired Entity is currently a party or is currently subject, as applicable, and copies of all such agreements or orders have been made available to Parent.
- (n) No Acquired Entity has recognized a material amount of Subpart F income as defined in Section 952 of the Code during the Pre-Closing Tax Period of a taxable year of any Acquired Entity, as applicable, that includes but does not end on the Closing Date.
- (o) No Acquired Entity is or has been a party to any "listed transaction" as defined in Section 6707A(c) of the Code or Treasury Regulations section 1.6011-4 or comparable Laws of jurisdictions other than the United States.
- (p) There are no Liens with respect to Taxes (other than Permitted Liens) upon any of the assets or properties of any Acquired Entity.
- (q) No written claim has been made by a Taxing Authority in a jurisdiction where Tax Returns are not filed or Taxes are not paid by or with respect to any Acquired Entity that such a Tax Return is required to be filed or such Taxes are required to be paid.
- (r) The unpaid Taxes of the Acquired Entities (i) as of December 31, 2016, have been reserved for in accordance with GAAP on the Latest Balance Sheet, and (ii) will be reserved for in accordance with GAAP to account for the passage of time through the Closing Date in accordance with the past custom and practice of the Acquired Entities in filing their respective Tax Returns and in accordance with applicable Law.
- (s) There are no currently outstanding agreements, consents or waivers to extend any statute of limitations filed by or on behalf of any Acquired Entity with respect to any Tax Return of any Acquired Entity or in respect of any Taxes payable by or with respect to any Acquired Entity. No power of attorney has been granted with respect to any matter relating to Taxes payable by or with respect to any Acquired Entity that is currently in force.
- (t) The Company Common Stock, the Company Preferred Stock, and the Company Options represent the only equity interests in the Company for Tax purposes.

(u) <u>Section 3.13(u)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule sets forth the respective entity classifications of the Acquired Entities for U.S. federal and state Tax purposes and such classifications have been effective since the inception of the applicable Acquired Entity.

Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, nothing in this Section 3.13 is or shall be construed as a representation or warranty with respect to (i) any transaction or event occurring or any Tax position that any Person may take in or in respect of any Tax Period (or portion thereof) beginning after the Closing Date, except to the extent set forth in the representations and warranties in Section 3.13(g), (h), (i), (j), (k), (o), or (t) or (ii) the amount, value or condition of, or any limitations on, any Tax Attribute, or the ability of Parent or any of its affiliates to utilize such Tax Attribute after the Closing; provided, for the avoidance of doubt, that nothing in clause (ii) of this sentence shall limit the obligations of the Company Securityholders pursuant to Section 8.2(a)(iv).

# Section 3.14 <u>Employee Benefit Plans</u>.

Section 3.14(a) of the Company Disclosure Schedule contains a true, (a) complete and correct list of each material Company Plan. The Company has described or provided or made available to Parent current, accurate and complete copies of all (i) Company Plans, including all amendments thereto and all related trust documents, (ii) the three most recent annual reports (Form Series 5500), if any, required under ERISA or the Code in connection with each Company Plan, (iii) the most recent actuarial reports (if applicable) for all Company Plans, (iv) the most recent summary plan description, if any, required under ERISA with respect to each Company Plan, (v) all material written contracts, instruments or agreements relating to each Company Plan, including administrative service agreements and group insurance contracts, (vi) the most recent Internal Revenue Service determination or opinion letter issued with respect to each Company Plan intended to be qualified under Section 401(a) of the Code, (vii) all filings under the Internal Revenue Service's Employee Plans Compliance Resolution System program or any of its predecessors or the Department of Labor Delinquent Filer Voluntary Compliance Program and (viii) all material correspondence in the last 5 years with a Governmental Entity with respect to an inquiry, audit or investigation of any Company Plan. "Company Plans" means the employee benefit plans, programs and arrangements (including any "employee benefit plan" as defined in Section 3(3) of the Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974 ("ERISA")) and any other employment, bonus, stock option, stock purchase, incentive, deferred compensation, supplemental retirement, health, life or disability insurance, dependent care, severance and other fringe or employee benefit plans, programs, arrangements or agreements sponsored or maintained by any Acquired Entity or to which any Acquired Entity makes contributions or with respect to which any Acquired Entity has or would reasonably be expected to have any liability (contingent or otherwise) for the benefit of any current or former employee, officer, director, consultant or other natural person service provider of any Acquired Entity in their capacity as such. No Acquired Entity has any express or implied commitment to create any other material employee benefit plan, program or arrangement or to modify, change or terminate any Company Plan, other than with respect to a modification, change or termination required by ERISA or the Code.

- (b) Each Company Plan that is intended to be qualified under Section 401(a) of the Code has received a favorable determination from the Internal Revenue Service stating that such Company Plan is so qualified or is a prototype plan to whose sponsor a favorable opinion letter has been issued by the Internal Revenue Service and nothing has occurred that caused or is reasonably likely to cause the loss of such qualification or the imposition of any penalty or Tax liability. Each Company Plan has been operated in material compliance with its terms and all applicable Laws and complies in form and in operation in all material respects with all applicable Laws.
- (c) No current or former employee, officer, director, consultant or other service provider of any Acquired Entity is or may become entitled under any Company Plan to receive health, life insurance or other welfare benefits (whether or not insured), beyond their retirement or other termination of service, other than health continuation coverage as required by Section 4980B of the Code or other applicable Laws.
- (d) Each Company Plan that constitutes in any part a nonqualified deferred compensation plan within the meaning of Section 409A of the Code has been operated and maintained in all material respects in operational and documentary compliance with Section 409A of the Code and all Internal Revenue Service guidance promulgated thereunder.
- (e) Neither the execution and delivery of this Agreement nor the consummation of the Merger will, either alone or in combination with any other event, (i) entitle any current or former employee, officer, director, consultant or other natural person service provider of the Company to severance pay or any other similar termination payment, or (ii) accelerate the time of payment or vesting, or increase the amount of or otherwise enhance any benefit due any such employee, officer, director, consultant or other natural person service provider.
- (f) No Acquired Entity is a party to any Contract (including any Company Plan) that has resulted or would result, separately or in the aggregate, in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement (either alone or in combination with any other events), in the payment of any "excess parachute payments" within the meaning of Section 280G of the Code.
- (g) Other than benefit Claims made in the ordinary course of business, there are no Claims which have been asserted, instituted or, to the Company's Knowledge, threatened against any Company Plan, the assets of any Company Plan or any Acquired Entity or the plan administrator or any fiduciary of the Company Plans with respect to the operation of such Company Plans.
- (h) No Acquired Entity has incurred any material liability for any Tax, fine or penalty under the Code, ERISA or other applicable Law in connection with the existence or operation of any Company Plan, and no fact or event exists which could give rise to any such material liability.
- (i) None of the Acquired Entities or any ERISA Affiliate sponsors, contributes to, or has any liability (contingent or actual) with respect to, a multiemployer plan

within the meaning of Section 3(37) or Section 4001(a)(3) of ERISA ("<u>Multiemployer Plan</u>"), a multiple employer welfare arrangement within the meaning of Section 3(40) of ERISA (a "<u>MEWA</u>") or an arrangement subject to Section 302 or Title IV of ERISA or Section 412 of the Code (a "<u>Title IV Plan</u>"), and during the preceding six (6) years none of the Acquired Entities or any ERISA Affiliate has maintained, sponsored or contributed to or been required to contribute to a Multiemployer Plan, MEWA or Title IV Plan.

(j) None of the Acquired Entities or any ERISA Affiliate has used the services of workers provided by third party contract labor suppliers, temporary employees, "leased employees" within the meaning of Section 414(n) of the Code or individuals who have provided services as independent contractors in a manner that could result in the disqualification of any Company Plan or the imposition of penalties or excise taxes with respect to any Company Plan by the Internal Revenue Service, the Department of Labor or any other Governmental Entity.

#### Section 3.15 Labor Matters.

- (a) No Acquired Entity is party to, or bound by, any Collective Bargaining Agreements; there are no Collective Bargaining Agreements that pertain to any of the employees of the any Acquired Entity; and no employees of any Acquired Entity are represented by any labor union, works council, trade union or labor organization with respect to their employment with any Acquired Entity.
- (b) No labor union, trade union, labor organization or group of employees of any Acquired Entity has made a pending demand for recognition or certification, and there are no representation or certification proceedings or petitions seeking a representation proceeding presently pending or, to the Company's Knowledge, threatened in writing to be brought or filed with the National Labor Relations Board or any other labor relations tribunal or authority. To Company's Knowledge, there have been no union organizing activities with respect to any employees of any Acquired Entity.
- (c) Since January 1, 2014, (i) there has been no actual, or to the Company's Knowledge, threatened material arbitrations, material grievances, strikes, lockouts, slowdowns, work stoppages or material labor-related Claims or disputes (collectively, "Labor Disputes") against or affecting any Acquired Entity, and no such Labor Disputes are pending, and (ii) none of the Acquired Entities or any of their employees, agents or representatives have committed any unfair labor practice as defined in the National Labor Relations Act. The Acquired Entities (i) are not in material violation of any Collective Bargaining Agreement or Law pertaining to labor, employment or employment practices including all Laws regarding worker classification, health and safety, wages and hours, labor relations, employment discrimination, disability rights or benefits, equal opportunity, immigration, plant closures and layoffs, affirmative action, employee leave issues, unemployment insurance and workers' compensation and (ii) are not, and have not been since January 1, 2014, a party to any Claim alleging a violation of any Collective Bargaining Agreement or Law pertaining to labor, employment or employment practices, nor, to the Company's Knowledge, is any such Claim pending or threatened.

- Except as would not result in material liability to the Acquired Entities, the (d) Acquired Entities (i) are not delinquent in any payments to, or on behalf of, any current or former independent contractors or employees of any Acquired Entity for any services, benefits or amounts required to be reimbursed or otherwise paid or provided, (ii) have withheld and reported all amounts required by Law or by agreement to be withheld and reported with respect to wages, salaries and other payments to any current or former independent contractors or employees of any Acquired Entity and (iii) are not liable for any payment to any trust or other fund governed by or maintained by or on behalf of any Governmental Entity with respect to unemployment compensation benefits, social security or other benefits or obligations for any current or former independent contractors or employees of any Acquired Entity (other than routine payments to be made in the ordinary course of business and consistent with past practice). Since January 1, 2014, none of the Acquired Entities have been subject to any audit or investigation by any Governmental Entity with respect to its employee classification or wage and hour practices or compliance. The Acquired Entities do not have any direct or indirect material liability as a result of any misclassification of any Person as an independent contractor rather than as an employee or as "exempt" or "nonexempt" from wage and hour requirements under applicable Law.
- (e) No Acquired Entity is or has been (i) a "contractor" or "subcontractor" (as defined by Executive Order 11246), (ii) required to comply with Executive Order 11246 or (iii) required to maintain an affirmative action plan.
- (f) No employee of any Acquired Entity is, to the Company's Knowledge, in material violation of any term of any employment agreement, nondisclosure agreement, common law nondisclosure obligation, fiduciary duty, noncompetition agreement, restrictive covenant or other obligation (i) to any Acquired Entity or (ii) to a former employer of any such employee relating (1) to the right of any such employee to be employed by any Acquired Entity or (2) to the knowledge or use of trade secrets or proprietary information.
- (g) The Acquired Entities are and have been in compliance with all notice and other requirements under the WARN Act. In the eighteen (18) months prior to the date of this Agreement, none of the Acquired Entities have (i) effectuated a "plant closing" (as defined in the WARN Act), (ii) effectuated a "mass layoff" (as defined in the WARN Act) or (iii) undertaken any other similar action requiring notice under the WARN Act or other similar applicable Law.
- (h) For purposes of this <u>Section 3.15</u>, reference to any Acquired Entity shall include any professional employer organization engaged by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries in the provision of labor or employment related services for the Company or any of its Subsidiaries and reference to employees of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries shall include such employees engaged through or with a professional employer organization.

# Section 3.16 Environmental Matters.

(a) (i) Each Acquired Entity is and has been in material compliance with all applicable Environmental Laws, (ii) none of the Acquired Entities has received any written communication alleging that an Acquired Entity is in violation of, or has any liability

under, any applicable Environmental Law or Environmental Permit, and (iii) there is no material Environmental Claim pending or, to the Company's Knowledge, threatened against any Acquired Entity.

(b) There has been no material Release of Hazardous Materials at any of the properties that are currently or formerly owned, leased, operated or used by any Acquired Entity or, to the Company's Knowledge, at any properties at which any Acquired Entity has assumed liability for any Release of Hazardous Materials or other environmental matters or otherwise provided an indemnification for such liability.

Section 3.17 Insurance. Section 3.17 of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists all material insurance policies naming any Acquired Entity or any director, officer or employee thereof as an insured or beneficiary or as a loss payable payee for which any Acquired Entity is obligated to pay all or part of the premiums as of the date of this Agreement. Since January 1, 2014, each Acquired Entity has been continuously insured with recognized insurers or has self-insured, in each case in such amounts and with respect to such risks and losses as is required by Law and any Material Contract and as is customary for companies in the United States conducting the businesses conducted by each Acquired Entity. Since January 1, 2014, no Acquired Entity has received any written communication notifying it of any (a) cancellation or invalidation of any insurance policy held by it, (b) refusal of any coverage or rejection of any material Claim under any insurance policy held by it or (c) material adjustment in the amount of the premiums payable with respect to any material insurance policy held by it. There is no pending material Claim by any Acquired Entity against any insurance carrier under any insurance policy held by any Acquired Entity.

Section 3.18 <u>Takeover Statutes</u>. No "business combination," "fair price," "moratorium," "control share acquisition" or similar antitakeover statute or regulation (including Section 203 of the DGCL) is applicable to the Company, the shares of Company Common Stock or the Merger in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

Section 3.19 <u>Customers and Suppliers.</u> <u>Section 3.19</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists (a) (i) all of the customers of each Acquired Entity during the period of January 1, 2015 through the date of the Latest Balance Sheet (each, a "<u>Customer</u>") and (ii) all revenue collected by the Acquired Entities from each Customer during such period, and (b) (i) all of the suppliers and all of the vendors, including all independent contractors, of the Acquired Entities during the period of January 1, 2015 through the date of the Latest Balance Sheet, to which the Acquired Entities paid in excess of \$100,000 during such period (each, a "<u>Supplier</u>") and (ii) all amounts paid by the Acquired Entities to each Supplier during such period. The Company has not received any written or, to the Company's Knowledge, oral notice from any Person alleging or asserting that the Company's performance under any Customer Contract, or the performance of any of the Company's products or services (whether under Customer Contract or otherwise), (1) is or has been deficient or substandard or (2) is or has been adverse to, or caused substantial disruption to, the businesses or operations of any Customer.

Section 3.20 <u>Sufficiency of Assets</u>. (a) Upon the Closing, the assets and properties of the Acquired Entities will constitute all of the material assets and properties used or

held for use in the businesses of the Acquired Entities as currently conducted, (b) at the Closing, Parent (through its ownership of the Acquired Entities) will have sufficient rights, property and assets to conduct the operations of the businesses of the Acquired Entities as currently conducted in all material respects and (c) from and after the Closing, none of the Company Stockholders or their Representatives will own any material assets or properties used in or held for use in the businesses of the Acquired Entities as currently conducted.

- Section 3.21 Solvency. Each Acquired Entity is able to pay its debts as they become due and owns assets and property that have a fair saleable value greater than the amounts required to pay its debts (including a reasonable estimate of the amount of all contingent liabilities). Taken as a whole, the Acquired Entities have reasonable capital to carry on their businesses as currently conducted.
- Section 3.22 <u>Bank Accounts.</u> <u>Section 3.22</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule lists, in all material respects, the names and locations of banks, trust companies and other financial institutions at which any Acquired Entity maintains bank accounts and the names of all individuals authorized to make withdrawals therefrom.
- Section 3.23 <u>Brokers.</u> No broker, finder or investment banker is entitled to any brokerage, finder's or other similar fee or commission in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement based upon arrangements made by or on behalf of any Acquired Entity.
- Section 3.24 <u>Matters Regarding Control</u>. As of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing, the Company is its own "ultimate parent entity" (as defined in the HSR Act). Each of the annual net sales and total assets of the Company, as shown on the Company's last regularly prepared annual statement of income and expense and last regularly prepared balance sheet, respectively, is less than \$16,200,000. No information provided by the Company or its Representatives to the Premerger Notification Office of the Federal Trade Commission prior to the date of this Agreement contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

### ARTICLE IV

# REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES OF PARENT AND MERGER SUB

Parent and Merger Sub, jointly and severally, represent and warrant to the Company:

- Section 4.1 <u>Due Organization; Etc.</u> Each of Parent and Merger Sub has been duly organized and is validly existing and in good standing under the Laws of the State of Delaware and has all requisite corporate power and authority to own, lease and operate its properties and assets and to conduct its businesses in the manner in which its businesses are currently being conducted.
- Section 4.2 <u>Authority; Binding Nature of Agreement</u>. Each of Parent and Merger Sub has the requisite corporate power and authority to enter into and to perform its covenants and agreements under this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to

which it is a party and, subject to the adoption of this Agreement by the sole stockholder of Merger Sub, to consummate the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which it is a party. The board of directors of Parent has unanimously adopted resolutions declaring it advisable for Parent to enter into this Agreement and approving the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by Parent and the consummation by Parent of the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement. The board of directors of Merger Sub has unanimously adopted resolutions (a) declaring it advisable for Merger Sub to enter into this Agreement and approving the execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement by Merger Sub and the consummation by Merger Sub of the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement, (b) directing that the adoption of this Agreement be submitted to the sole stockholder of Merger Sub for its consideration at a meeting duly called and held and (c) resolving to recommend that the sole stockholder of Merger Sub adopt this Agreement. Such resolutions have not been subsequently rescinded, modified or withdrawn in any way. The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party, by Parent and Merger Sub, as applicable, and the consummation by Parent and Merger Sub of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party have been duly and validly authorized by all necessary corporate action on the part of Parent and Merger Sub, and no other corporate proceedings on the part of Parent or Merger Sub are necessary to authorize this Agreement, each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party, the performance by Parent and Merger Sub of their respective covenants and agreements under this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party or the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party, other than the adoption of this Agreement by the sole stockholder of Merger Sub and the filing of the Certificate of Merger with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware. This Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger is or will be a party has been duly and validly executed and delivered on behalf of Parent and Merger Sub, as applicable, and, assuming the due authorization, execution and delivery of this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger is or will be a party by the other parties thereto, constitutes a legal, valid and binding obligation of Parent and Merger Sub, enforceable against Parent and Merger Sub in accordance with its terms, subject to (i) Laws of general application relating to bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other Laws affecting creditors' rights generally and (ii) rules of law governing specific performance, injunctive relief and other equitable remedies.

# Section 4.3 <u>Non-Contravention; Consents.</u>

(a) The execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement, and each Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger is or will be a party, by Parent and Merger Sub, as applicable, and the consummation by Parent and Merger Sub of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each Other Transaction Agreement to which the Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party does not and will not (i) contravene, conflict with or result in any violation or breach of any of the provisions of the Organizational Documents of Parent or Merger Sub, (ii) subject to making or obtaining, as applicable, the Consents and Filings set forth in Sections 4.3(b)(i)—(ii), contravene, conflict with or result in any violation or breach of any

Law or (iii) require any Consent of or Filing with or to any Person other than a Party with respect to, result in any breach or violation of, constitute a default (or an event which with or without notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, result in the loss of a benefit or result in the imposition of an obligation under, or give rise to any right of termination, cancellation or amendment of any Person or any acceleration of any right of any Person or of any obligation of any Person under, any Contract to which Parent or Merger Sub is a party or any Permit to which Parent or Merger Sub is subject, except, in the case of the foregoing clauses (i) and (ii), as would not result in a material adverse effect on the ability of Parent or Merger Sub to comply with its obligations under this Agreement.

- (b) Assuming the accuracy of the Company's representations and warranties in Section 3.24, neither Parent nor Merger Sub is required to make any Filing with or to, or to obtain any Consent from, any Governmental Entity in connection with the execution and delivery of this Agreement, or any Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger Sub is or will be a party, by Parent or Merger Sub or the performance and consummation by Parent or Merger Sub of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any Other Transaction Agreement to which Parent or Merger is or will be a party, except for the following:
- (i) the Filing with the SEC of such reports under, and such other compliance with, the Exchange Act or the Securities Act, and the rules and regulations of the SEC promulgated thereunder, as may be required in connection with this Agreement or the Merger; and
- (iii) the Filing of the Certificate of Merger with the Secretary of State of the State of Delaware.
- Section 4.4 Ownership and Operations of Merger Sub. Parent owns beneficially all of the outstanding shares of common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, of Merger Sub. Merger Sub was formed solely for the purpose of engaging in the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and has no assets, liabilities or obligations of any nature other than those incident to its formation and pursuant to the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, and prior to the Effective Time, will not have engaged in any other business activities other than those relating to such transactions.
- Section 4.5 <u>Claims; Orders.</u> There is no material Claim pending (or, to Parent's Knowledge, being threatened) against Parent or Merger Sub, and there is no material Order outstanding against Parent or Merger Sub or to which Parent or Merger Sub is subject, in each case that would result in a material adverse effect on the ability of Parent or Merger Sub to comply with its obligations under this Agreement.
- Section 4.6 <u>Sufficient Funds</u>. Parent and Merger Sub have and, assuming that the conditions to the obligations of Parent and Merger Sub to consummate the Merger have been satisfied or waived, will have at the Closing (directly or through one (1) or more Affiliates) funds immediately available, as and when needed, that are necessary to (a) consummate the Merger at the Closing, (b) otherwise perform their respective obligations under this Agreement and (c) pay any fees, expenses or other amounts payable by Parent or Merger Sub in connection with the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.

Section 4.7 <u>Brokers</u>. Except for Piper Jaffray & Co., no broker, finder or investment banker is entitled to any brokerage, finder's or other similar fee or commission in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement based upon arrangements made by or on behalf of Parent or Merger Sub.

#### ARTICLE V

# **COVENANTS AND AGREEMENTS**

## Section 5.1 <u>Interim Operations of the Acquired Entities.</u>

- (a) Prior to the Closing, except as consented to in writing in advance by Parent or as otherwise expressly permitted by this Agreement or as set forth in Section 5.1(a) of the Company Disclosure Schedule, the Company shall, and shall cause each of its Subsidiaries to, (i) carry on its businesses in the ordinary course consistent with past practice and (ii) use commercially reasonable efforts to preserve intact its business and goodwill and its relationships with Governmental Entities, customers, suppliers, landlords and other persons with which it has material business relations, and to keep available the services of its current officers and employees.
- (b) Without limiting the generality of <u>Section 5.1(a)</u>, the Company agrees that, prior to the Closing, except as consented to in writing in advance by Parent or as otherwise expressly permitted by this Agreement or as set forth in <u>Section 5.1(b)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule, the Company shall not, and shall not permit any of its Subsidiaries to:
  - (i) amend its Organizational Documents;
  - (ii) adjust, split, combine, amend the terms of or reclassify any shares
- (iii) declare, set aside or pay any dividend or distribution (whether payable in cash, stock or property) with respect to any shares of its capital stock or issue or propose or authorize the issuance of any other securities in respect of, in lieu of or in substitution for shares of its capital stock;

of its capital stock;

- (iv) enter into any Contract with respect to the voting of its capital stock;
- (v) merge or consolidate with any other Person or restructure, reorganize, recapitalize or completely or partially liquidate (or adopt a plan of liquidation for);
- (vi) acquire (including by merger or consolidation) any equity interest in any other Entity;
- (vii) acquire assets from any other Person other than in the ordinary course of business consistent with past practice;

- (viii) issue, sell, grant, pledge, dispose of, transfer or encumber, or authorize the issuance, sale, grant, pledge, disposition, transfer or encumbrance of, any shares of capital stock or other securities of any Acquired Entity, other than shares of Company Common Stock issuable upon the conversion of Company Preferred Stock in accordance with the Company Charter or the exercise of Company Options;
- (ix) sell, transfer, lease, sublease or license to any third party, or encumber, any material assets or properties;
- (x) sell, transfer, grant any exclusive rights to any third party in, or encumber any IP Rights, or fail to take any action necessary to continue prosecution of pending patent applications and any payments or filings necessary to maintain patents;
- (xi) repurchase, redeem or otherwise acquire any shares of its capital stock or any other equity interests or any rights, warrants or options to acquire such shares or interests;
  - (xii) incur any Indebtedness;
- (xiii) adopt or amend any Company Plan (except for any amendment required by applicable Law), increase the compensation or fringe benefits of any director, officer, employee, consultant or other natural person service provider of any Acquired Entity (except in the case of individuals who are not officers of the Company, for increases in base pay in the ordinary course of business that are consistent with past practices or as required by agreements, plans, programs or arrangements in effect on the date of this Agreement and previously made available to Parent), or grant any new equity awards to any director, officer, employee, consultant or other natural person service provider of any Acquired Entity;
- (xiv) (1) terminate, materially extend or materially amend any Material Contract, waive, release or assign any material rights or Claims under any Material Contract or (2) enter into any Contract that would be a Material Contract if it had been entered into on or prior to the date of this Agreement (except for any such Contract that would be a Material Contract solely under Section 3.10(a) (viii) and the terms and conditions of which are similar in all material respects to the terms and conditions of Contracts entered into by the Acquired Entities prior to the date of this Agreement that address the same subject matter as such new Contract);
- (xv) change any of its methods of accounting or accounting practices in any material respect, except as may be required by applicable Laws or GAAP;
- (xvi) (i) make, change or revoke any material Tax election, (ii) surrender or compromise any right to claim a Tax refund, (iii) settle or compromise any claim, notice, audit, assessment or other proceeding relating to Taxes, (iv) amend any Tax Return, (v) adopt or change any method of Tax accounting, (vi) enter into any agreement affecting any Tax liability or refund or file any request for rulings or special Tax incentives with any Taxing Authority, (vii) enter into any Tax allocation, indemnity or sharing agreement, (viii) extend or waive the statute of limitations period applicable to any Tax or Tax Return, or (ix) consummate any transaction outside the ordinary course of business involving any non-U.S. Subsidiary of the

Company which could (A) increase Parent's or any of its Affiliates' (which following the Closing shall include the Company and its Subsidiaries) liability for Taxes or (B) result in, or change the character of, any income or gain (including Subpart F income as defined in Section 952 of the Code) that Parent or any of its Affiliates (which following the Closing shall include the Company and its Subsidiaries) must report on any Tax Return;

(xvii) fund any capital expenditure in any calendar quarter which, when added to all other capital expenditures made by the Acquired Entities in such calendar quarter, would exceed by more than 5% the aggregate amount budgeted for capital expenditures in such calendar quarter (as set forth in Section 5.1(b)(xvii) of the Company Disclosure Schedule);

(xviii) settle or compromise any Claim (1) where the settlement or compromise involves injunctive or other equitable relief against any Acquired Entity or (2) if such settlement or compromise would result in any Acquired Entity paying an amount more than \$25,000 in excess of the proceeds received or to be received, if any, from any insurance policies or any third-party indemnitor in connection with such settlement or compromise;

(xix) make any loan or advance to, or any investment in (either by purchase of stock or securities, contributions to capital, property transfers or purchase of any property or assets of), any Person, except for advances of business expenses in the ordinary course of business consistent with past practice;

(xx) incur any Lien on any of the properties or assets (whether tangible or intangible) of, or used by, any Acquired Entity, other than Permitted Liens; or

Section 5.1(b).

(xxi) enter into a Contract to take any of the actions described in this

Section 5.2 <u>Exclusive Dealing</u>. Prior to the Closing, the Company shall not, and they shall not permit any of its respective Representatives or the Company Stockholders to, take any action to encourage, initiate or engage in, or permit to exist or continue, any discussions or negotiations with, or provide any information to, any Person (other than Parent, Merger Sub or their respective Representatives), or enter into any Contract with any Person (other than Parent, Merger Sub or their respective Representatives), concerning (a) any purchase, acquisition, issuance or disposition of any Company Common Stock, Company Preferred Stock, any equity securities of any Acquired Entity or any securities of any Acquired Entity with equity features, including voting rights, (b) any merger, business combination, recapitalization or similar transaction involving any Acquired Entity or (c) any sale, assignment, transfer, lease, license or other disposition of any material portion of the assets of any Acquired Entity (except to the extent otherwise permitted by Section 5.1(a)).

Section 5.3 <u>Consents, Approvals and Filings; Other Actions</u>. Subject to the terms and conditions of this Agreement, each of Parent and the Company shall use its reasonable best efforts to take, or cause to be taken, all actions, and to do, or cause to be done, all things necessary, proper or advisable under applicable Law to cause the conditions to the Closing set forth in <u>Article VI</u> to be satisfied as promptly as reasonably practicable after the date of this

Agreement, including using its reasonable best efforts to (a) obtain all Consents of Governmental Entities that are necessary, proper or advisable to consummate the Closing, (b) obtain the Required Contractual Consents and all other third-party Consents that are necessary to consummate the Merger and (c) execute and deliver any additional instruments that are necessary to consummate the Merger. Without limiting the forgoing, Parent and the Company will use reasonable best efforts to cause such conditions to be satisfied, and the Closing to occur, on June 2, 2017. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, this Section 5.3 shall not apply in respect of Tax matters.

Access. Upon reasonable notice, the Company shall provide Parent's Section 5.4 Representatives reasonable access, during normal business hours throughout the period prior to the Effective Time, to each Acquired Entity's properties, books, records and personnel with knowledge of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, and during such period, the Company shall cause to be furnished promptly to Parent and its Representatives all readily available information concerning each Acquired Entity's businesses as Parent may reasonably request; provided, however, that the Company shall not be required to permit any inspection, or to disclose any information, that in the reasonable, goodfaith judgment of the Company would (i) result in the disclosure of any trade secrets of third parties or violate any obligation of any Acquired Entity with respect to confidentiality; provided that the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain the required consent of such third party to provide such access or disclosure, (ii) jeopardize protections afforded any Acquired Entity under the attorney-client privilege or the attorney work product doctrine; provided that the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to allow for such access or disclosure to the maximum extent that does not result in a loss of attorney-client privilege, or (iii) include confidential information with respect to any specific customer relationship to the extent such disclosure is prohibited by applicable Laws: provided that, if any such access or disclosure is limited for the reasons described in clauses (i)–(iii) above, Parent and the Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to establish a process that (through use of steps such as targeted redactions, provision of information to counsel to review and summarize for Parent or use of a "clean room" environment for analysis and review of information by joint integration teams in coordination with counsel and the Company) will provide Parent with timely access to the fullest extent possible to the substance of the information described in this Section 5.4. All information obtained by Parent and its Representatives pursuant to this Section 5.4 shall be treated as "Confidential Information" for purposes of the Confidentiality Agreement.

## Section 5.5 Employee Matters.

(a) For a period of one (1) year following the Closing Date (or, if shorter, during the period of employment with Parent or its Affiliates), Parent shall provide or cause to be provided to each employee of an Acquired Entity as of immediately prior to the Closing (such employees, collectively, the "Continuing Employees"), compensation (including base salary and target cash incentive opportunities but excluding any equity or equity-based compensation) and benefits which are substantially comparable, in the aggregate, to the compensation and benefits provided to the Continuing Employees immediately prior to the Closing Date. Any vacation or paid time off accrued but unused by a Continuing Employee as of immediately prior to the Closing Date will be credited to such Continuing Employee following the Closing Date and will not be subject to

forfeiture and will be available for use in accordance with the applicable vacation policy covering Continuing Employees.

- (b) For eligibility and vesting purposes under the employee benefit plans of Parent and its Affiliates that provide benefits to Continuing Employees after the Closing Date (the "Parent <u>Plans</u>"), each Continuing Employee shall be credited with his or her years of service or comparable experience with an Acquired Entity or any Affiliates of an Acquired Entity before the Closing Date to the same extent as such employee was entitled before the Closing Date to credit for such service under any comparable Company Plan, except to the extent such credit would result in a duplication of benefits. For purposes of each Parent Plan providing medical, dental, pharmaceutical or vision benefits to any Continuing Employee, to the extent such Continuing Employee satisfied participation requirements and waiting period requirements under comparable Company Plans, all pre-existing condition exclusions and actively-at-work requirements of such Parent Plan shall be waived for such Continuing Employee and his or her covered dependents, and all eligible expenses incurred by such Continuing Employee and his or her covered dependents under the comparable Company Plans during the portion of the plan year ending on the date of such Continuing Employee's participation in the corresponding Parent Plan begins shall be taken into account under such Parent Plan for purposes of satisfying all deductible, coinsurance and maximum out-of-pocket requirements applicable to such employee and his or her covered dependents for the applicable plan year as if such amounts had been paid in accordance with such Parent Plan subject to all applicable terms and conditions relating to such benefits or amounts.
- (c) Prior to the Closing, the Company shall take all actions that may be reasonably necessary or appropriate to cause the Company Plans and Contracts set forth in Section 5.5(c) of the Company Disclosure Schedule to terminate as of the date immediately preceding the Closing Date unless otherwise stated in the Company Disclosure Schedule. All resolutions, notices and other documents issued, adopted or executed in connection with the implementation of this Section 5.5(c) shall be subject to Parent's prior review and approval, which will not be unreasonably withheld or delayed.
- (d) Following the date of this Agreement, the Company and Parent (and their respective Affiliates) shall reasonably cooperate in all matters reasonably necessary to effect this Section 5.5, including (i) exchanging information and data relating to employee benefits and employee benefit plan coverages (except to the extent prohibited by applicable Law) and (ii) making any and all required communications with employees of the Company.
- (e) Except to the extent otherwise provided in Section 5.5(c), nothing in this Section 5.5 shall be treated as an amendment of, an undertaking to amend or terminate, or a limitation on the ability of Parent or its Affiliates to amend or terminate any employee benefit plan (including any Company Plan). Nothing in this Agreement shall require Parent, the Surviving Corporation or the Company to continue to employ the services of any particular individual following the Closing Date. No provision of this Agreement shall create any third-party beneficiary rights in any employee or any other natural person service provider of any Acquired Entity or any beneficiary or dependents thereof with respect to the compensation, terms and conditions of employment and benefits that may be provided.

Section 5.6 Publicity; Confidentiality. Prior to the Closing, none of the Parties or any of their Representatives shall issue any press release or make any public announcement or comment concerning this Agreement or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement without obtaining the prior written consent of the other Parties, unless (i) any such release, announcement or comment is reasonably necessary to comply with such Party's obligations under applicable Law or under the rules of any national securities exchange on which the securities of such Party or any of its Affiliates are listed; provided that to the extent so required by applicable Law, the Party intending to make such release, announcement or comment shall use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with applicable Law to consult with the Company or Parent, as applicable, in advance of such release with respect to the text thereof, and (ii) any such press release, announcement or comment is consistent with any release, announcement or comment already made in compliance with this Section 5.6; provided, however, that Parent shall be permitted to issue an initial press release concerning this Agreement or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement with the prior written consent of the Company and the Company acknowledges and agrees that it has consented to such the issuance of such initial press. Each Party agrees that this Agreement and the terms and conditions hereof, and any other agreement entered into in connection with this Agreement and the terms and conditions thereof, shall be kept confidential and shall not be disclosed or otherwise made available to any other Person and that copies of this Agreement and such other agreements shall not be publicly filed or otherwise made available to the public, except where such disclosure, availability or filing, is reasonably necessary to comply with applicable Law or the rules of any national securities exchange on which the securities of such Party or any of its Affiliates are listed. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, following Closing, the Stockholder Representative shall be permitted to: (i) after the public announcement of the Merger, publicly announce that it has been engaged to serve as the Stockholder Representative in connection with the Merger as long as such announcement does not disclose any of the other terms of the Merger or the other transactions contemplated herein; and (ii) disclose information as required by law or to employees, advisors, agents or consultants of the Stockholder Representative and to the Company Securityholders, in each case who have a need to know such information, provided that such persons are subject to confidentiality obligations with respect thereto.

## Section 5.7 Indemnification; Directors' and Officers' Insurance.

- (a) From and after the Effective Time, Parent shall cause the Surviving Corporation and its Subsidiaries to fulfill and honor in all respects the obligations of each Acquired Entity pursuant to any indemnification provision and any exculpation provision set forth in the Organizational Documents of any Acquired Entity as in effect on the date of this Agreement or in any indemnification agreement by and between the Company and its employees, officers or directors and listed on Section 5.7 of the Company Disclosure Schedule. Parent shall not permit any such indemnification or exculpation provision to be amended, repealed or otherwise modified after the Effective Time in any manner that would adversely affect the rights of the Indemnified Parties thereunder, unless any such amendment, repeal or modification is required by applicable Law.
- (b) At or prior to the Effective Time, the Company shall be permitted to obtain a prepaid "tail" policy that provides the Indemnified Parties with directors' and officers' liability insurance for a period ending no earlier than the sixth  $(6^{th})$  anniversary of the Closing

Date; <u>provided</u> that (i) the premium payable for such "tail" policy shall not exceed 300% of the annual premium currently payable by the Company with respect to the current directors' and officers' liability insurance policy of the Company in effect as of the date of this Agreement and made available to Parent and (ii) 50% of the prepaid premium for such "tail" policy shall be borne by Parent.

- (c) The Indemnified Parties (as defined in <u>Section 5.7(d)</u>) are intended to be third-party beneficiaries of this <u>Section 5.7</u>, with full rights of enforcement as if a party thereto.
- (d) For purposes of this Agreement, each Person who is or was an officer or director of an Acquired Entity at or at any time prior to the Effective Time shall be deemed to be an "Indemnified Party."
- Section 5.8 <u>Termination of Affiliate Contracts</u>. At or prior to the Closing, the Company shall terminate, or cause to be terminated, all Affiliate Contracts set forth in <u>Section 5.8</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule, and shall cause each Acquired Entity to be released from all covenants, agreements, liabilities and obligations under such Affiliate Contracts, whether arising prior to, at or after the Closing, in each case, to be effective at or prior to the Closing.

# Section 5.9 <u>Treatment of Company Options</u>.

- (a) Prior to the Effective Time, the Company shall take or cause to be taken any and all actions necessary under all Company Options and the Company Equity Plan to cause the Company Options to be treated as set forth in this <u>Section 5.9</u>.
- (b) All Company Options that are outstanding and not vested and exercisable as of five (5) days before the anticipated Closing Date shall become fully vested and exercisable as of such time, subject to the consummation of the Merger. Prior to the anticipated Closing Date, the Company shall notify all holders of Company Options (whether or not described in the preceding sentence) that Company Options shall be subject to the treatment described in this <u>Section 5.9</u>.
- (c) Each Company Option that is outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time shall be canceled and terminated as of the Effective Time and converted into the right of the Company Optionholder thereof to receive the following (collectively, the "Company Option Merger Consideration"):
- (i) the amount equal to the product of (1) the difference of (A) the Per-Share Portion of the Estimated Common Stock Closing Consideration, minus (B) the applicable exercise price per share of Company Common Stock issuable under such Company Option, multiplied by (2) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable under such Company Option, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in Section 5.9(d) (the aggregate amount payable under this Section 5.9(c)(i), the "Aggregate Company Option Closing Amount");

- (ii) a contingent right to receive an amount equal to the product of (1) the Per-Share Portion of the aggregate amount of the funds held in the Indemnification Escrow Account, if any, that is released to the Company Stockholders and the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to Section 8.7(c), multiplied by (2) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable under such Company Option, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in Section 8.7(c) and the Escrow Agreement;
- (iii) a contingent right to receive an amount equal to the product of (1) the Per-Share Portion of the portion of the aggregate amount of the funds held in the Representative Expense Fund, if any, that is released to the Company Stockholders and the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to Section 10.5, multiplied by (2) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable under such Company Option, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in Section 10.5; and
- (iv) a contingent right to receive an amount equal to the product of (1) the Per-Share Portion of any Earnout Payments, <u>multiplied by</u> (2) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable under such Company Option, in each case, in cash and without interest and payable as set forth in <u>Section 5.11</u> and <u>Exhibit D</u>.
- (d) At the Closing and immediately following the Effective Time, Parent shall pay or cause to be paid to the Surviving Corporation an amount equal to the Aggregate Company Option Closing Amount by wire transfer of immediately available funds to the account of the Surviving Corporation identified in the Payment Statement. Subject to Section 5.9(e), all payments of the applicable portion of the Aggregate Company Option Closing Amount to each Company Optionholder shall be made (without interest) by the Surviving Corporation to such Company Optionholder no later than the next regularly scheduled payroll date but in no event shall the Surviving Corporation be required to make such payments sooner than three (3) Business Days after the Closing Date.
- (e) Unless earlier mailed or delivered by the Company, as soon as reasonably practicable after the Effective Time, and in any event no later than five (5) Business Days after the Closing Date, Parent or the Surviving Corporation shall mail or deliver, or cause to be mailed or delivered, to each Company Optionholder a surrender form, substantially in the form of Exhibit F (each, a "Company Optionholder Surrender Form"). A Company Optionholder shall not be entitled to receive any specified cash amount or any contingent right under Section 5.9(c) until such Company Optionholder has delivered to Parent a duly executed and fully completed Company Optionholder Surrender Form. Upon delivery to Parent by a Company Optionholder of a duly executed and fully completed Company Optionholder Surrender Form, such Company Optionholder shall be entitled to receive (i) the specified cash amounts into which the Company Options formerly held by such Company Optionholder were converted under Section 5.9(c)(i), and Parent shall cause to be paid such specified cash amounts to such Company Optionholder in accordance with Section 5.9(d), and (ii) any contingent right into which any such Company Options were converted under Sections 5.9(c)(ii)-(iii); provided, however, that, for the avoidance of doubt, no Company Optionholder shall be entitled to receive any cash amount contemplated by the contingent rights set forth in Sections 5.9(b)(ii)-(iii) until such cash amounts are otherwise payable in accordance with, and which cash amounts are subject to

specified contingencies set forth in, this Agreement. From and after the Effective Time, each Company Option will be deemed, for all corporate purposes, to evidence only the rights set forth in Section 5.9(c).

# Section 5.10 <u>Company Stockholder Approval; Information Statement; Conversion of Preferred Stock.</u>

- (a) Promptly (and in any event within five (5) hours) after the execution and delivery of this Agreement, the Company shall deliver to Parent a copy of an action by written consent, in form and substance reasonably acceptable to Parent, duly executed by the requisite Company Stockholders, evidencing the Company Stockholder Approval (the "Company Written Consent"). To the extent required by the DGCL, within ten (10) days after the date on which the Company obtains the Company Stockholder Approval, the Company shall prepare and distribute to all Company Stockholders that do not adopt this Agreement pursuant to the Company Written Consent or otherwise in accordance with the DGCL a notice of the adoption of this Agreement by the written consent of the Company Stockholders pursuant to the applicable provisions of the DGCL, and the Company shall take all actions necessary to provide that such notices constitutes the notice to the Company Stockholders required by applicable Law that appraisal rights may be available to the Company Stockholders pursuant to the DGCL. No later than five (5) days prior to circulating such notice, the Company shall provide a copy thereof to Parent and shall consider in good faith Parent's reasonable comments thereon prior to such distributing such notice to the Company Stockholders.
- (b) Prior to the Effective Time, (i) the Company shall take all necessary action to cause each share of Company Preferred Stock then outstanding to be converted into the number of shares of Company Common Stock set forth under the then effective conversion provisions of the Company Charter, and (ii) the Company shall deliver reasonable evidence of such conversions to Parent.

## Section 5.11 <u>Earnout Payments</u>.

- (a) From and after the Closing, at such times as provided in <u>Exhibit D</u>, Parent shall make, or cause to be made, the payments to the Company Stockholders and the Surviving Corporation or its designee set forth in, on and subject to the terms, conditions, contingencies, procedures and definitions set forth in, <u>Exhibit D</u> (the "<u>Earnout Payments</u>").
- (b) The Parties understand and agree that (i) the contingent right to receive any Earnout Payment shall not be represented by any form of certificate or other instrument, is not transferable, except by operation of law, and does not constitute an equity or ownership interest in Parent, the Surviving Corporation or any of their respective Affiliates, (ii) neither the Stockholder Representative nor any Company Securityholder shall have any rights as a holder of the securities of Parent, the Surviving Corporation or any of their respective Affiliates solely as a result of the Company Securityholders' contingent right to receive any Earnout Payment under this Section 5.11 and (iii) no interest shall be payable with respect to any Earnout Payment.

- (c) The Parties acknowledge and agree that, from and after the Closing, Parent shall have sole discretion with regard to all matters relating to the operation of the Company; <a href="provided">provided</a> that neither Parent nor the Surviving Corporation shall take (or omit to take) any action in bad faith for the purpose of avoiding or reducing any Earnout Payment; <a href="provided">provided</a>, <a href="further">further</a>, that subject to the foregoing, neither Parent nor the Surviving Corporation shall have any obligation to operate the Surviving Corporation or its Subsidiaries in order to achieve any Earnout Payment or to maximize the aggregate amount of the Earnout Payments.
- (d) Within forty-five (45) days after the payment by Parent of any Earnout Payment to the Company Securityholders, Parent shall provide the Stockholder Representative with an accounting of the payment, for Tax purposes, setting forth the amount of the payment that constitutes interest and the amount of the payment that constitutes principal, computed in accordance with the principles of Section 483 of the Code and the Treasury Regulations promulgated thereunder, which principal shall be treated for income Tax purposes as an adjustment to the Merger Consideration. Parent and each Company Securityholder shall (i) prepare and timely file all forms and Tax Returns required to be filed in connection with such accounting, (ii) be bound by such accounting for all Tax purposes, (iii) prepare and file, and cause its Affiliates to prepare and file, its Tax Returns on a basis consistent with such accounting and (iv) not take any position, or cause its Affiliates to take any position, inconsistent with such accounting on any Tax Return, in any audit or proceeding before any Taxing Authority, or in any report made for Tax purposes; provided, however, that notwithstanding anything in this Section 5.11(d) to the contrary, Parent and the Company Securityholders shall be permitted to take a position inconsistent with that set forth in this Section 5.11(d) if required to do so by a final and non-appealable Order of any court of competent jurisdiction.
- (e) If, at the time any Earnout Payment is due to be paid to the Company Stockholders or the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to <a href="Exhibit D">Exhibit D</a>, Parent has delivered a Claim Notice under <a href="Section 8.4(a">Section 8.4(a</a>) with respect to any Specified Indemnification Obligation, Parent shall be entitled to, and shall, withhold and set off against any such Earnout Payment the amount of any indemnifiable Losses to which Parent may be entitled under such Specified Indemnification Obligation; <a href="provided">provided</a>, <a href="however">however</a>, that, if the amount of indemnifiable Losses to which Parent is entitled with respect to any such Claim Notice, as finally determined pursuant to <a href="Section 8.4">Section 8.4</a>, is less than the amount withheld from any Earnout Payment with respect thereto pursuant to this <a href="Section 5.11(e">Section 5.11(e)</a>, then Parent shall promptly pay an aggregate amount equal to such difference to the (i) the Company Stockholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, and (ii) with respect to Company Optionholders, the Surviving Corporation or its designee for further distribution to the Company Optionholders through payroll, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share.

#### ARTICLE VI

# **CONDITIONS TO THE MERGER**

Section 6.1 <u>Conditions to Each Party's Obligation to Effect the Merger</u>. The respective obligations of each Party to consummate the Merger shall be subject to the satisfaction (or waiver by Parent, Merger Sub and the Company, if permissible under applicable Laws) on or prior to the Closing Date of the following conditions:

- (a) <u>Stockholder Approval</u>. The Company shall have obtained the Company Stockholder Approval.
- (b) <u>Legal Restraints</u>. No Law, whether preliminary, temporary or permanent, shall be in effect that prevents, makes illegal or prohibits, and no Claim by any Governmental Entity shall be pending that seeks to prevent, make illegal or prohibit, the consummation of the Merger (any such Law or Claim, a "<u>Legal Restraint</u>").
- Section 6.2 Conditions to Obligations of Parent and Merger Sub. The obligations of Parent and Merger Sub to consummate the Merger are further subject to the satisfaction (or waiver by Parent, if permissible under applicable Law) at or prior to the Closing of the following conditions:
  - (a) Representations and Warranties.
- (i) Each representation and warranty of the Company made in Section 3.3, Section 3.4 and Section 3.7(b) shall be accurate in all respects as of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date as if made as of the Closing Date (except to the extent any such representation or warranty speaks as of the date of this Agreement or any other specific date, in which case such representation or warranty shall have been accurate in all respects as of such date).
- (ii) Each representation and warranty of the Company made in this Agreement (other than the representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.3, Section 3.4 and Section 3.7(b)) shall be accurate in all respects (read, for purposes of this Section 6.2(a)(ii) only, without any qualifier as to materiality, "material" or "Material Adverse Effect") as of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date as if made as of the Closing Date (except to the extent any such representation or warranty speaks as of the date of this Agreement or any other specific date, in which case such representation or warranty shall have been accurate in all respects as of such date), except that any inaccuracies in such representations and warranties will be disregarded for purposes of this Section 6.2(a) (ii) if such inaccuracies, individually or in the aggregate, have not resulted in and would not result in (1) a Material Adverse Effect or (2) a material adverse effect on the ability of the Company to comply with its obligations under this Agreement.
- (b) <u>Performance of Covenants of the Company</u>. The Company shall have performed or complied in all material respects with each covenant or agreement required to be performed or complied with by it under this Agreement at or prior to the Closing.
- (c) Officers' Certificate. Parent shall have received a certificate, dated as of the Closing Date and duly executed by an executive officer of the Company, certifying as to the matters set forth in Section 6.2(a) and Section 6.2(b).
- (d) <u>Third-Party Consents</u>. The Company shall have (i) obtained Consents to the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement pursuant to the Contracts set forth in <u>Section 6.2(d)</u> of the Company Disclosure Schedule (the "<u>Required Contractual Consents</u>") and (ii)

delivered to Parent evidence, reasonably acceptable thereto, of the obtainment of the Required Contractual Consents.

- (e) <u>Management Offer Letters</u>. Each of the Management Offer Letters shall be in full force and effect.
- Section 6.3 Conditions to Obligation of the Company. The obligation of the Company to consummate the Merger is further subject to the satisfaction (or waiver by the Company, if permissible under applicable Laws) at or prior to the Closing of the following conditions:
- (a) Representations and Warranties. The representations and warranties of Parent and Merger Sub contained in this Agreement shall be accurate in all respects (read, for purposes of this Section 6.3(a) only, without any qualifier as to materiality or "material") as of the date of this Agreement and as of the Closing Date as if made as of the Closing Date (except to the extent any such representation or warranty speaks as of the date of this Agreement or any other specific date, in which case such representation or warranty shall have been accurate in all respects as of such date), except that any inaccuracies in such representations and warranties will be disregarded for purposes of this Section 6.3(a) if such inaccuracies, individually or in the aggregate, have not resulted in and would not result in a material adverse effect on the ability of Parent or Merger Sub to comply with its obligations under this Agreement.
- (b) <u>Performance of Obligations of Parent and Merger Sub</u>. Each of Parent and Merger Sub shall have performed or complied with in all material respects each covenant or agreement required to be performed or complied with by it under this Agreement at or prior to the Closing.
- (c) <u>Officers' Certificate</u>. The Company shall have received a certificate dated as of the Closing Date and duly executed by an executive officer of Parent certifying as to the matters set forth in <u>Section 6.3(a)</u> and <u>Section 6.3(b)</u>.

#### **ARTICLE VII**

#### **TERMINATION**

# Section 7.1 <u>Termination Rights</u>.

- (a) <u>Termination by Mutual Consent</u>. The Company and Parent shall have the right to terminate this Agreement at any time prior to the Effective Time by mutual written consent.
- (b) <u>Termination by Either the Company or Parent</u>. Each of the Company and Parent shall have the right to terminate this Agreement at any time prior to the Effective Time, if:

- (i) the Closing shall not have been consummated prior to 5:00 p.m. Tulsa, Oklahoma time on July 21, 2017 (the "End Date"); or
- (ii) a Legal Restraint is in effect that has become final and nonappealable.

# (c) Termination by Parent.

- (i) Parent shall have the right to terminate this Agreement prior to the Effective Time if the Company breaches or fails to perform any of its covenants or agreements contained in this Agreement, or if any of the representations or warranties of the Company contained in this Agreement fails to be accurate, which breach or failure (1) would give rise to the failure of a condition set forth in Section 6.2(a) or Section 6.2(b), as applicable, and (2) is not reasonably capable of being cured by the Company by the End Date or, if reasonably capable of being cured by the End Date, is not cured by the Company within thirty (30) days after receiving written notice from Parent of such breach or failure.
- (ii) Parent shall have the right to terminate this Agreement if the Company does not deliver the Company Written Consent to Parent in accordance with <u>Section 5.10</u> by the date that is one (1) Business Day after the date of this Agreement; <u>provided</u>, <u>however</u>, that Parent shall not be permitted to terminate this Agreement under this <u>Section 7.1(c)(ii)</u> after the Company delivers the Company Written Consent to Parent.
- (d) Termination by the Company. The Company shall have the right to terminate this Agreement prior to the Effective Time if Parent or Merger Sub breaches or fails to perform any of its covenants or agreements contained in this Agreement, or if any of the representations or warranties of the Parent or Merger Sub contained in this Agreement fails to be accurate, which breach or failure (i) would give rise to the failure of a condition set forth in Section 6.1, Section 6.3(a) or Section 6.3(b), as applicable, and (i) is not reasonably capable of being cured by Parent or Merger Sub by the End Date or, if reasonably capable of being cured by the End Date, is not cured by Parent or Merger Sub within thirty (30) days after receiving written notice from the Company of such breach or failure.

## Section 7.2 <u>Effect of Termination</u>; <u>Procedure for Termination</u>.

(a) In the event that this Agreement is terminated pursuant to Section 7.1, this Agreement shall be of no force or effect, without any liability or obligation on the part of any Party (or any stockholder or Representative thereof), whether arising before or after such termination, based on, arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the negotiation, execution, performance or subject matter hereof (whether in contract or in tort or otherwise, or whether at law (including at common law or by statute) or in equity); provided, however, (i) that this Section 7.2, Section 10.2 and Article XI shall survive the termination of this Agreement and shall remain in full force and effect and (ii) this Section 7.2(a) shall not relieve any Party of any liability for fraud or any willful and material breach of this Agreement occurring prior to any such termination.

(b) This Agreement may be terminated only pursuant to <u>Section 7.1</u>. In order to terminate this Agreement under <u>Section 7.1</u>, the Party desiring to terminate this Agreement shall give written notice of such termination to the other Parties in accordance with <u>Section 11.8</u>, specifying the provision of this Agreement pursuant to which such termination is effected.

## ARTICLE VIII

## **INDEMNIFICATION**

Section 8.1 Survival. The representations and warranties of the Parties contained in this Agreement shall survive the Closing until, and all Claims with respect thereto shall terminate on, the date that is eighteen (18) months after the Closing Date (the "General Termination Date"); provided, however, that (a) the Fundamental Representations shall survive the Closing until, and all Claims with respect thereto shall terminate, on the date that is four (4) years after the Closing Date, (b) the Company IP Representations shall survive the Closing until, and all Claims with respect thereto shall terminate, on the date that is four (4) years after the Closing Date, and (c) the Company Tax Representations shall survive the Closing until, and all Claims with respect thereto shall terminate on, the date that is ninety (90) days after the expiration of the statute of limitations (including with respect to Taxes, all extensions or waivers thereof in accordance with Section 9.8) applicable to the applicable subject matter thereof. All of the covenants and agreements of the Parties contained in this Agreement shall survive the Closing until, and all Claims with respect thereto shall terminate on, (i) the date provided in such covenants and agreements, if any, or until the date on which they are performed in accordance with their respective terms, plus (ii) an additional thirty (30) days. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a Claim Notice with respect to a Claim for indemnification under Section 8.2 has been delivered pursuant to Section 8.4 prior to the expiration of the applicable survival period set forth in this Section 8.1, the representations, warranties, covenants or agreements that are the subject of such Claim Notice shall survive with respect to the matters set forth in such Claim Notice until such Claim is finally and fully resolved. This Section 8.1 shall operate as a contractual statute of limitations; provided, however, that nothing in this Section 8.1 shall limit any liability for, or any Party's rights to bring a Claim for, fraud.

## Section 8.2 <u>Indemnification</u>.

- (a) From and after the Closing, subject to the other provisions of this Article VIII, the Company Securityholders, severally and not jointly and, subject to Section 8.7(d), pro rata in accordance with each such Company Securityholder's Pro Rata Share, shall indemnify Parent for, and defend and hold Parent harmless from and against, any and all Losses actually suffered, paid or incurred by Parent, the Surviving Corporation, the Subsidiaries of Parent and the Company and their respective officers, directors, agents, attorneys and employees as a result of or related to:
- (i) any breach of any of the representations and warranties of the Company set forth in this Agreement;

- (ii) any breach of any covenant or agreement of the Company set forth in this Agreement;
- (iii) (1) any error in the Payment Schedule or (2) any Claim made by a Company Securityholder against Parent, Merger Sub, the Surviving Corporation or any Acquired Entity (or any director or officer thereof) in connection with this Agreement or the Other Transaction Agreements or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or the Other Transaction Agreements, except for any Claim for indemnification pursuant to Section 8.2(b); and
- (iv) any Pre-Closing Tax Obligation, any Unpaid Company Expenses in excess of the Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses and 50% of any Transfer Taxes.
- (a) From and after the Closing, subject to the other provisions of this <u>Article VIII</u>, Parent shall indemnify the Company Securityholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, for, and defend and hold each of them harmless from and against, any and all Losses actually suffered, paid or incurred by the Company Securityholders and their respective officers, directors, agents, attorneys and employees (excluding the Company) as a result of or related to:
- (i) any breach of any of the representations and warranties of Parent or Merger Sub set forth in this Agreement; and
- (ii) any breach of any covenant or agreement of Parent or Merger Sub set forth in this Agreement.

# Section 8.3 <u>Monetary Limitations.</u>

- (a) Except with respect to fraud in connection with this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby or any breach of a Fundamental Representation, a Company Tax Representation or a Company IP Representation, (i) no Indemnifying Party shall have any obligation to indemnify any Indemnified Person pursuant to Section 8.2(a)(i) or Section 8.2(b)(i), as applicable, in respect of Losses that are less than \$10,000 for any series of one or more related Claims arising out of the same facts or circumstances, and (ii) any such Losses shall be excluded from any determination of whether any Deductible Amount has been exceeded.
- (b) Except with respect to fraud in connection with this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby or any breach of a Fundamental Representation, a Company IP Representation or a Company Tax Representation, (i) the Company Securityholders shall not have any obligation to indemnify under Section 8.2(a)(i) until the aggregate amount of all Losses for which the Company Securityholders are obligated to indemnify pursuant to Section 8.2(a)(i) exceeds \$37,500 (the "Deductible Amount"), at which point the Company Securityholders shall be liable for all such indemnifiable Losses in excess of the Deductible Amount subject to the limitations, caps, terms and conditions set forth herein, (ii) the Company Securityholders' aggregate liability under Section 8.2(a) (i) shall not exceed the Indemnification Escrow Amount (the "Cap Amount"), (iii) Parent shall not have any obligation to indemnify under Section 8.2(b)(i) until the aggregate amount of all Losses for which Parent is obligated to

indemnify pursuant to <u>Section 8.2(b)(i)</u> exceeds the Deductible Amount, at which point Parent shall be liable for all such Losses in excess of the Deductible Amount and (iv) Parent's aggregate liability under <u>Section 8.2(b)(i)</u> shall not exceed the Cap Amount.

- (c) With respect to any breach of a Company IP Representation, each Company Securityholder's aggregate liability under <a href="Section 8.2(a)(i)">Section 8.2(a)(i)</a> (together with all Claims made under <a href="Section 8.2(a)(i)">Section 8.2(a)(i)</a> and subject to <a href="Section 8.7(d">Section 8.7(d</a>)) shall not exceed 20% of the portion of the Merger Consideration received by such Company Securityholder, including any amounts paid to such Company Securityholder out of the Indemnification Escrow Account.
- (d) With respect to any breach of a Company Fundamental Representation or a Company Tax Representation, and with respect to Claims under Section 8.2(a)(ii) through (iv), each Company Securityholder's aggregate liability under Section 8.2(a)(i) through (iv) (together with all Claims made under Section 8.2(a) and subject to Section 8.7(d)) shall not exceed the portion of the Merger Consideration received by such Company Securityholder, including any amounts paid to such Company Securityholder out of the Indemnification Escrow Account.
- (e) A Company Securityholder shall not be responsible and shall have no liability with respect to any Losses to the extent arising out of or resulting from the fraud of another Company Securityholder acting in his capacity as such and not as a Representative of the Company; <a href="mailto:provided">provided</a>, <a href="however">however</a>, a Company Stockholder's liability for Losses to the extent arising out of or resulting from fraud by such Company Securityholder in his, her or its capacity as such shall not be limited.

## Section 8.4 <u>Indemnification Procedures</u>.

As a condition to making an indemnification Claim under Section 8.2, any (a) Person seeking indemnification under <u>Section 8.2</u> (each, an "<u>Indemnified Person</u>") shall assert any Claim for indemnification, including any Third-Party Claim, by delivering written notice thereof (a "Claim Notice") in accordance with Section 11.8 to the Stockholder Representative (if the Company Securityholders are the party from which indemnification is sought pursuant to Section 8.2) or to Parent (if Parent is the party from which indemnification is sought pursuant to Section 8.2) (the Company Securityholders or Parent, as the case may be, the "Indemnifying Party") prior to the expiration of the applicable survival period set forth in Section 8.1. Each Claim Notice shall describe in reasonable detail the nature of the Claim, shall reference the provision or provisions of this Agreement under which the Claim is asserted and, if applicable, the applicable sections of this Agreement which are alleged to have been breached by the Indemnifying Party, and attach copies of all material written evidence thereof that the Indemnified Person has received from any Person that is not a Party or a Person Affiliated with a Party (a "Third Party"). The date of delivery of such Claim Notice is referred to herein as the "Claim Date." If the Indemnifying Party objects to any Claims within such Claim Notice, such objection must be made in writing delivered to the Indemnified Person within thirty (30) days after the Claim Date (the "Objection Notice"). The Indemnified Person and the Indemnifying Party (the Stockholder Representative in the

case where the Company Securityholders are the Indemnifying Party) shall attempt to resolve any dispute for a period of thirty (30) days from the date of the delivery of the Objection Notice to the Indemnified Person and thereafter, either may request that such dispute shall be resolved in the manner set forth in Section 11.4. If a Claim Notice was delivered to the Indemnifying Party and no Objection Notice was delivered to the Indemnified Person within 30 days after the Claim Date, then the Indemnifying Party will be deemed to have irrevocably agreed to pay the Losses at issue in the Claim Notice, subject to the limitations, caps, terms and conditions set forth herein. Once the Claim that is the subject of an Objection Notice is resolved in accordance with this Agreement, a memorandum setting forth such resolution will be prepared and signed by the Stockholder Representative and Parent and delivered to the Escrow Agent, if applicable.

Upon receipt by an Indemnifying Party of a Claim Notice in respect of a Claim brought by a Third Party (a "Third-Party Claim"), the Indemnifying Party shall be entitled to (i) assume and have sole control over the defense and investigation of such Third-Party Claim at its sole cost and expense (subject to the last sentence of this Section 8.4(b)) and with counsel of its own choosing if it gives notice of its intention to do so to the Indemnified Person within thirty (30) days after the delivery of such Claim Notice by the Indemnified Person and (ii) negotiate a settlement or compromise of, or consent to the entry of an Order with respect to, such Claim; provided that, if (1) such settlement, compromise or consent does not include a full and unconditional waiver and release by such Third Party of all applicable Indemnified Persons for all Losses with respect to such Third-Party Claim, (2) such settlement, compromise or consent imposes a Lien on any of the assets of any such Indemnified Person or (3) such settlement, compromise or consent results or would reasonably be expected to result in any restriction or condition that would apply to or affect any such Indemnified Person, or the conduct of any such Indemnified Person's business, such settlement, compromise or consent shall be permitted only with the prior written consent of such Indemnified Person (whether or not such Indemnified Person is an actual or potential party to such Third-Party Claim), which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed. If the Indemnifying Party elects to assume control of the defense and investigation of any such Third-Party Claim, then the Indemnified Person shall be entitled to participate in (but not control) such defense and investigation with counsel reasonably acceptable to the Indemnifying Party at such Indemnified Person's sole cost and expense; provided, however, that, if in the reasonable opinion of counsel to the Indemnified Person, there are legal defenses available to the Indemnified Person that are different from or additional to those available to the Indemnifying Party or there exists a conflict of interest between the Indemnifying Party and the Indemnified Person that cannot be waived, the Indemnifying Party shall be liable for the reasonable fees and expenses of counsel to the Indemnified Person in each jurisdiction for which the Indemnified Person determines counsel is required.

(c) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in <u>Section 8.4(b)</u>, the Indemnifying Person shall not be entitled to assume and control the defense or investigation of any Third-Party Claim that (i) seeks an injunction or other equitable relief against an Indemnified Person, (ii) involves an allegation that an Indemnified Person committed a criminal act or (iii) would reasonably be expected to result in Losses to all applicable Indemnified Persons which, taken with other then-existing Losses for which such Indemnifying Party is obligated to provide indemnification under this <u>Article VIII</u>, would exceed the then-remaining limit of liability of such Indemnified Person under <u>Section 8.3</u>. If, within thirty (30) days after delivery by an

Indemnified Person of any Claim Notice with respect to a Third-Party Claim, the Indemnifying Party (1) (A) notifies such Indemnified Person in writing that the Indemnifying Party does not elect to defend and investigate such Third-Party Claim or (B) fails to deliver to the Indemnified Party a written election to assume the defense and investigation of such Third-Party Claim or (2) is not entitled to assume the defense or investigation of such Third-Party Claim, then (I) such Indemnified Person may, at its option, defend, investigate, settle or compromise, or consent to an entry of an Order with respect to, such Third-Party Claim; provided that any such settlement, compromise or consent shall be permitted only with the written consent of the Indemnifying Party (whether or not the Indemnifying Party is an actual or potential party to such Third-Party Claim), which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed; provided, however, any such consent shall not represent the agreement of the Indemnifying Party that any such Third Party Claims is an indemnifiable Claim under this Agreement or the amount of Losses recoverable hereunder, and (II) the Indemnifying Party may participate in (but not control) any such defense and investigation at its sole cost and expense.

(d) Notwithstanding anything in this <u>Section 8.4</u> to the contrary, <u>Article IX</u> shall govern for purposes of any Third Party Claim that is a Tax Claim.

# Section 8.5 <u>Losses; Mitigation</u>.

- (a) The amount of any and all Losses of an Indemnified Person that is indemnifiable under this <u>Article VIII</u> shall be determined net of (i) any amounts actually recovered by such Indemnified Person under or pursuant to any insurance policy or any indemnity or reimbursement arrangement or Contract pursuant to which such Indemnified Person has rights to recovery with respect to such Losses and (ii) any Tax benefits actually realized by any Indemnified Person via an actual reduction in cash Taxes payable by such Indemnified Person in connection with and in the same year as such Losses are paid or incurred.
- (b) Each Indemnified Person shall use commercially reasonable efforts to mitigate all Losses, to the extent required by applicable Law, after becoming aware of any event which could reasonably be expected to give rise to any Loss that is indemnifiable under this Article VIII.
- Section 8.6 Breach; Losses; Materiality Scrape. For purposes of this Article VIII only, (a) a breach of a representation or warranty in this Agreement shall be deemed to exist if such representation or warranty (i) is actually breached or actually fails to be true and correct as of the Closing Date as if made as of the Closing Date (except to the extent any such representation or warranty speaks as of the date of this Agreement or any other specific date, in which case such representation or warranty shall have been accurate in all respects as of such date) or (ii) except with respect to the No Scrape Representations, would have been breached or would have failed to be true and correct as of the Closing Date as if made as of the Closing Date (except to the extent any such representation or warranty speaks as of the date of this Agreement or any other specific date, in which case such representation or warranty shall have been accurate in all respects as of such date) if such representation or warranty had not contained any limitation or qualification as to materiality, "material" or "Material Adverse Effect" or similar language set forth in such representation or warranty, and (b) the amount of Losses in respect of any such breach or failure, including any deemed breach or failure pursuant to the foregoing clause (a),

shall be determined without regard to any such limitation or qualification as to materiality, "material" or "Material Adverse Effect" or similar language set forth in such representation or warranty.

# Section 8.7 <u>Exclusive Remedy; Escrow Releases; Other Indemnification Matters.</u>

- (a) From and after the Closing, except for fraud in connection with this Agreement or the transactions contemplated hereby, the provisions of this Article VIII, Article IX, the Merger Support Agreement and the Escrow Agreement shall be the sole and exclusive remedy for any Claim (whether in contract or in tort or otherwise, or whether at law (including at common law or by statute) or in equity) that may be based on, arise out of or relate to this Agreement, the negotiation, execution, performance or subject matter of this Agreement, the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any Losses alleged to be suffered by any Party as a result of the actions or failure to act by any Party in connection with this Agreement or the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.
- The Indemnification Escrow Account shall serve as security for the indemnification obligations of the Company Securityholders under Section 8.2(a). The Indemnification Escrow Account (i) shall be the exclusive source of recovery for any indemnification obligation of the Company Securityholders under Section 8.2(a)(i) other than with respect to any breach of any Company Fundamental Representation, Company IP Representation or any Company Tax Representation and (ii) shall be the first but nonexclusive source of recovery for any indemnification obligation of the Company Securityholders under (1) Section 8.2(a)(i) with respect to any breach of any Company Fundamental Representations, Company IP Representations or any Company Tax Representation or (2) Section 8.2(a)(ii), Section 8.2(a)(iii) or Section 8.2(a)(iv) (the indemnification obligations described in the foregoing clauses (1) and (2), the "Specified Indemnification Obligations"), in each case, until such time as no funds remain in the Indemnification Escrow Account; provided, however, that, for the avoidance of doubt, to the extent any funds remain in the Indemnification Escrow Account, Parent shall be required to first seek recovery from the Indemnification Escrow Account for any Specified Indemnification Obligation prior to seeking payment directly from the Company Stockholders in accordance with Section 8.7(d) in respect of any such Specified Indemnification Obligation. For the avoidance of doubt, any funds that have been released to Parent from the Indemnification Escrow Account in respect of any indemnification obligation described under the foregoing clause (i) shall be aggregated for purposes of determining whether, as of any particular time, the Company Securityholders have obligations to indemnify under Section 8.2(a)(i) (except with respect to fraud or any breach of a Fundamental Representation, Company IP Representation or a Company Tax Representation) in an amount equal to or less than the Cap Amount or the limitations set forth in Section 8.3(a), as applicable.

# (c) <u>Escrow Releases</u>.

(i) Although the specific provisions relating to the release of the funds held in the Indemnification Escrow Account shall be set forth in the Escrow Agreement, the Parties agree that, not later than five (5) Business Days following the date that is

one (1) year after the date of this Agreement (the "First Release Date"), the Escrow Agent shall release, by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Escrow Agreement, to (1) the Company Stockholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, and (2) with respect to Company Optionholders, the Surviving Corporation or its designee for further distribution to the Company Optionholders through payroll, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, an amount equal to (A) 50% of all funds then in the Indemnification Escrow Account, if any, minus (B) the sum of (I) all amounts, if any, that, as of the First Release Date, represent claimed Losses under thenpending indemnification Claims subject to Claim Notices pursuant to the terms of the Escrow Agreement ("First Release Outstanding Claims"), plus (II) any amount due to Parent from the Indemnification Escrow Account pursuant to indemnification Claims that have been finally resolved in accordance with this Agreement and the Escrow Agreement but which the Escrow Agent has not yet released from the Indemnification Escrow Account to Parent. Between the First Release Date and the General Termination Date, with respect to any First Release Outstanding Claim, the Parties agree that, subject to the terms and conditions of the Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Agent shall release, by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Escrow Agreement, to the (x) the Company Stockholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, and (y) with respect to Company Optionholders, the Surviving Corporation or its designee, for further distribution to the Company Optionholders through payroll, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, as and when any such First Release Outstanding Claim is resolved, an amount equal to the difference of (x) the amount initially claimed with respect to such First Release Outstanding Claim, minus (y) all amounts released from the Indemnification Escrow Account to Parent with respect to such Outstanding Claim; provided, however, that in no event shall any such release by the Escrow Agent result in less than an amount equal to the sum of (x) \$4,690,000, plus (y) 50% of any "Additional Indemnification Escrow Amount," as defined in the Escrow Agreement, that is delivered to the Escrow Agent prior to the First Release Date, being left in the Indemnification Escrow Account prior to the General Termination Date.

(ii) Although the specific provisions relating to the release of the funds held in the Indemnification Escrow Account shall be set forth in the Escrow Agreement, the Parties agree that, not later than five (5) Business Days following the General Termination Date, the Escrow Agent shall release, by wire transfer of immediately available funds in accordance with the Escrow Agreement, to (1) the Company Stockholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, and (2) with respect to Company Optionholders, the Surviving Corporation or its designee for further distribution to the Company Optionholders through payroll, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, an amount equal to (A) all funds then in the Indemnification Escrow Account, if any, minus (ii) the sum of (I) all amounts, if any, that, as of the General Termination Date, represent claimed Losses under then-pending indemnification Claims subject to Claim Notices pursuant to the terms of the Escrow Agreement ("Outstanding Claims"), plus (II) any amount due to Parent from the Indemnification Escrow Account pursuant to indemnification Claims that have been finally resolved in accordance with this Agreement and the Escrow Agreement but which the Escrow Agent has not yet released from the Indemnification Escrow Account to Parent. With respect to any Outstanding Claim, the Parties agree that, subject to the terms and conditions of the Escrow Agreement, the Escrow Agent shall release, by wire transfer

of immediately available funds in accordance with the Escrow Agreement, to the (x) the Company Stockholders, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, and (x) with respect to Company Optionholders, the Surviving Corporation or its designee, for further distribution to the Company Optionholders through payroll, pro rata in accordance with their respective Pro Rata Share, as and when any such Outstanding Claim is resolved, an amount equal to the difference of (x) the amount initially claimed with respect to such Outstanding Claim, minus (y) all amounts released from the Indemnification Escrow Account to Parent with respect to such Outstanding Claim.

- (a) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Agreement:
- (i) no Company Optionholder shall have any liability or responsibility under Section 8.2(a) with respect to any Specified Indemnification Obligation except to the extent (1) Parent seeks recovery with respect to such Specified Indemnification Obligation from the Indemnification Escrow Account, as contemplated by Section 8.7(b)(ii), or (2) Parent is required under Section 5.11(e) to withhold and set off against any Earnout Payment due to be paid to the Company Securityholders or the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to Exhibit D the amount of any indemnifiable Losses to which Parent may be entitled with respect to such Specified Indemnification Obligation; and
- (ii) except to the extent (1) Parent seeks recovery with respect to such Specified Indemnification Obligation from the Indemnification Escrow Account, as contemplated by Section 8.7(b)(ii), or (2) Parent is required under Section 5.11(e) to withhold and set off against any Earnout Payment due to be paid to the Company Securityholders or the Surviving Corporation or its designee pursuant to Exhibit D the amount of any indemnifiable Losses to which Parent may be entitled with respect to such Specified Indemnification Obligation, the Company Stockholders, severally and not jointly and pro rata in accordance with each such Company Stockholder's Company Stockholder Liability Percentage, shall be liable and responsible for 100% of such Specified Indemnification Obligation (including, for the avoidance of doubt, the portion of such Specified Indemnification Obligation for which the Company Optionholders would have been liable and responsible if Parent had taken any action described in the foregoing clauses (1) or (2)).
- Section 8.8 <u>Adjustments for Tax Purposes</u>. The Parties agree that any indemnification payments made pursuant to this Agreement (other than pursuant to Section 10.2) shall be treated for income Tax purposes as an adjustment to the Merger Consideration, unless otherwise required by applicable Law.

# ARTICLE IX

## **TAX MATTERS**

# Section 9.1 Responsibility for Filing Tax Returns.

(a) The Surviving Corporation shall prepare or cause to be prepared and file or cause to be filed all Tax Returns for the Acquired Entities that are required to be filed after the Closing Date. All Tax Returns of the Acquired Entities that include Pre-Closing Tax

Periods shall be prepared in a manner consistent with the Acquired Entities' respective past practices, as reasonably determined by the Surviving Corporation, unless otherwise required by applicable Tax Law.

(b) No later than fifteen (15) Business Days prior to the due date for filing of any Tax Return of any Acquired Entity that includes a Pre-Closing Tax Period, the Surviving Corporation shall provide the Stockholder Representative with a draft of such Tax Return. The Stockholder Representative shall have the right to review and provide reasonable comments on such Tax Returns during the ten (10) Business Day period following the receipt of such Tax Returns, which reasonable comments shall be incorporated by the Surviving Corporation and reflected in the applicable Tax Return as long as such comments are consistent with the reporting standard set forth in paragraph (a) above. In the case of any Tax Return of any Acquired Entity that includes the Closing Date, after receiving reasonable documentary evidence from the Surviving Corporation of the portion of the Taxes due and payable that relates to the Pre-Closing Tax Period, at least five (5) days prior to the due date for payment of such Taxes the Company Securityholders shall pay, or cause to be paid, such amount to Parent. No failure or delay of Parent in providing a Tax Return for the Stockholder Representative's review and comment shall reduce or otherwise affect the obligations or liabilities of the Company Securityholders pursuant to this Agreement except to the extent the Company Securityholders are actually and materially prejudiced by such failure or delay.

Straddle Periods. For purposes of this Agreement, whenever it is Section 9.2 necessary to determine the liability for Taxes of any Acquired Entity for any Straddle Period, the determination of the Taxes of such Acquired Entity for the portion of the Straddle Period ending on and including, and the portion of the Straddle Period beginning after, the Closing Date shall be determined by assuming that the Straddle Period consisted of two (2) taxable years or periods, one which ended at the close of the Closing Date and the other which began at the beginning of the day following the Closing Date, and items of income, gain, deduction, loss or credit of such Acquired Entity for the Straddle Period, shall be allocated between such two taxable years or periods on a "closing of the books basis" by assuming that the books of such Acquired Entity were closed at the close of the Closing Date; provided, however, (i) exemptions, allowances or deductions that are calculated on an annual basis, such as the deduction for depreciation, and (ii) periodic Taxes (other than income, franchise/capital, sales, use, or withholding Taxes) such as real and personal property taxes, shall be apportioned ratably between such periods based on the number of days for the portion of the Straddle Period ending on and including the Closing Date, on the one hand, and the number of days for the portion of the Straddle Period beginning after the Closing Date, on the other hand. For the avoidance of doubt, any amount of Subpart F income (as defined in Section 952 of the Code) that (x) is recognized by an Acquired Entity during the Pre-Closing Tax Period of a taxable year of such Acquired Entity that includes but does not end on the Closing Date, and (y) is required under Section 951(a) of the Code to be included in income by Parent or any of its Affiliates in the Post-Closing Tax Period, shall be apportioned to the Pre-Closing Tax Period. To the fullest extent permitted by applicable Law, the Deal-Related Tax Deductions relating to amounts that are actually paid by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries on or prior to the Closing Date or by any of the Company Securityholders or the cost of which is otherwise economically borne by any of the Company Securityholders shall be treated as arising in the Pre-Closing Tax Period and shall be utilized along with any net operating losses, net capital losses, research and development, research and experimentation,

investment, foreign or other Tax credits and similar Tax assets and attributes of any Acquired Entity that exist as of Closing to reduce the liabilities of the Acquired Entities in the Pre-Closing Tax Period.

Section 9.3 Tax Refunds. Any Tax refund (or credit for overpayment of Taxes, including any overpayment of estimated Taxes in the current taxable year) received (or applied to reduce Taxes) by Parent, the Surviving Corporation or any of their Affiliates that relates to a Pre-Closing Tax Period of any Acquired Entity shall be for the account of the Company Securityholders, except to the extent (i) such Tax refund or credit resulted from the carry back of a Tax Attribute that was economically generated after the Closing Date, (ii) such Tax refund or credit resulted from the payment of Taxes after the Closing Date to the extent the Company Securityholders have not indemnified Parent or the Surviving Corporation for such Taxes, or (iii) such Tax refund or credit gives rise to a payment obligation by the Surviving Corporation to any Person under applicable Law or pursuant to a provision of a contract or other agreement entered (or assumed) by any Acquired Entity on or prior to the Closing Date. Parent shall pay or cause to be paid any such Tax refund or credit to the Company Securityholders within fifteen (15) days after receipt or application thereof (without interest, other than interest received from a Taxing Authority), net of any income Taxes imposed on such refund or credit and any reasonable out-of-pocket expenses that Parent, the Surviving Corporation or any of their Affiliates directly incur (or will directly incur) with respect to their receipt or application of such Tax refund (and related interest). Parent, the Surviving Corporation and their Affiliates, will use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain such Tax refunds and credits, including, if commercially reasonable, by filing amended Tax Returns or quick refund claims. Any other Tax refunds and credits for overpayment of Taxes related to any Acquired Entity shall be for the sole account of Parent.

## Section 9.4 Contests Related to Taxes.

- (a) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in Section 8.4, if, after the Closing Date, a Party entitled to indemnification for Taxes under this Agreement receives notice of any audit, demand, claim, proposed adjustment, assessment, examination or other administrative or court proceeding (a "Tax Claim") with respect (in whole or in part) to such indemnified Taxes, such Party shall supply a copy of such document to the potentially affected Party within seven (7) days of receipt; provided, however, that no failure or delay on the part of the Party entitled to indemnification to give such notice shall reduce or otherwise affect the obligations or liabilities of the indemnifying Party pursuant to this Agreement, except to the extent the indemnifying Party is actually and materially prejudiced by such failure or delay. Any information provided or obtained under this paragraph shall be kept confidential, except as may otherwise be necessary in connection with the filing of a Tax Return, refund claims, or any Tax Claim, or as required by applicable Law.
- (b) Parent or the Surviving Corporation shall control any Tax Claim of any Acquired Entity or the Surviving Corporation; provided, however, in the case of a Tax Claim (or any portion thereof) relating to any Pre-Closing Tax Period of any Acquired Entity, (i) the Stockholder Representative may, at the expense of the Company Securityholders, participate in the defense of any such Tax Claim and (ii) Parent or the Surviving Corporation shall not, and shall not allow the Surviving Corporation to, settle or otherwise resolve any such Tax Claim without the prior written consent of the Stockholder Representative (which consent will not be

unreasonably withheld, delayed or conditioned) if such settlement or other resolution could reasonably be expected to materially increase the Tax liability of the Company Securityholders or any of their respective Affiliates for a Pre-Closing Tax Period.

Section 9.5 <u>Cooperation Related to Taxes</u>. Parent, the Surviving Corporation, the Company Securityholders, and the Stockholder Representative shall cooperate fully, as and to the extent reasonably requested by the other party, in connection with the filing of Tax Returns pursuant to this <u>Article IX</u>, any Tax Claim, any information necessary or reasonably requested to allow Parent or the Surviving Corporation to comply with any information reporting or withholding requirements contained in the Code or other applicable Laws. Such cooperation shall include the retention and (upon the other party's request) the provision of records and information that are reasonably relevant to any such Tax Claim and making employees available on a mutually convenient basis to provide additional information and explanation of any material provided hereunder. Any information obtained pursuant to this <u>Section 9.5</u> or pursuant to any other Section hereof providing for the sharing of information or review of any Tax Return or other schedule relating to Taxes with respect to any Acquired Entity shall be kept, unless otherwise required by applicable Law, confidential by the parties hereto and their respective legal and tax advisors.

Section 9.6 <u>Transfer Taxes</u>. Any Transfer Taxes arising in connection with the Merger shall be borne 50% by the Parent and 50% by the Company Securityholders. Parent, the Surviving Corporation and the Company Securityholders shall cooperate to minimize any such Transfer Taxes and shall each file or cause an Affiliate of each of them to sign and file all documentation with the relevant Taxing Authority relating to such Transfer Taxes as it may be required to sign or file under applicable Law.

Section 9.7 <u>Tax Sharing Agreements</u>. All Tax Sharing Agreements with respect to or involving any Acquired Entity shall be terminated as of the Closing Date, and after the Closing Date, none of the Acquired Entities shall be bound thereby or have any liability thereunder (whether related to any period before or after the Closing).

Section 9.8 Post-Closing Actions. None of Parent or any of its Affiliates shall (or shall cause or permit any of the Acquired Entities to) (a) amend any Tax Return of any Acquired Entity with respect to any Pre-Closing Tax Period or enter into any voluntary disclosure agreement, engage in any voluntary compliance procedures or make any other similar voluntary contact with any Taxing Authority with respect to any Tax Return of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries for any Pre-Closing Tax Period, (b) consent to the extension or waiver of the limitations period applicable to any Tax claim or assessment with respect to any Acquired Entity for any Pre-Closing Tax Period, or (c) make any Tax election with respect to any Acquired Entity that has effect for any Pre-Closing Tax Period, in each case unless (1) such action is required under applicable Law and Parent notifies the Stockholder Representative in advance of such action, (2) such action could not reasonably be expected to materially increase the Tax liability of the Company Securityholders or any of their respective Affiliates for a Pre-Closing Tax Period, or (3) the prior written consent of the Stockholder Representative has been obtained, which consent shall not be unreasonably withheld, conditioned or delayed.

## ARTICLE X

## STOCKHOLDER REPRESENTATIVE

- Section 10.1 <u>Appointment.</u> The Stockholder Representative is hereby appointed, authorized and empowered to act as a representative, exclusive agent and attorney-in-fact for the benefit of the Company Securityholders to act on behalf of each Company Securityholder in connection with and to facilitate the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, which shall include the power and authority:
- (a) to execute and deliver any Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement (with such modifications or changes therein as to which the Stockholder Representative, in its sole discretion, shall have consented) and to agree to such amendments or modifications thereto as the Stockholder Representative, in its sole discretion, determines to be desirable;
- (b) to execute and deliver such waivers and consents in connection with this Agreement and any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement and the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and thereby as the Stockholder Representative, in its sole discretion, may deem necessary or desirable;
- to enforce and protect the rights and interests of the Company Securityholders and to enforce and protect the rights and interests of the Stockholder Representative arising out of or under or in any manner relating to this Agreement and any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement, and to take any and all actions which the Stockholder Representative believes are necessary or appropriate under this Agreement for and on behalf of the Company Securityholders, including asserting or pursuing any Claim against Parent or its Representatives, in each case, to the extent such Claims are permitted under this Agreement, compromising or settling any such Claims, conducting negotiations with Parent and its Representatives regarding such Claims and, in connection therewith, to (1) assert or institute any Claim, (2) investigate, defend, contest or litigate any Claim initiated by a Party, its Affiliates or any other Person, or by any federal, state or local Governmental Entity against the Stockholder Representative, any Company Securityholder, and receive process on behalf of any Company Securityholder in any such Claim or investigation and compromise or settle on such terms as the Stockholder Representative shall determine to be appropriate, and give receipts, releases and discharges with respect to, any such Claim or investigation, (3) file any proofs of debt, claims and petitions as the Stockholder Representative may deem advisable or necessary and (4) file and prosecute appeals from any Order rendered in any such Claim or investigation, it being understood that the Stockholder Representative shall not have any obligation to take any such actions and shall not have any Liability for any failure to take any such actions;
- (d) to refrain from enforcing any right of any Company Securityholder or the Stockholder Representative arising out of or under or in any manner relating to this Agreement or any Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement; <u>provided</u>, <u>however</u>, that no such failure to act on the part of the Stockholder Representative,

except as otherwise provided in this Agreement, shall be deemed a waiver of any such right or interest by the Stockholder Representative or by such Company Securityholder unless such waiver is made in accordance with Section 11.2; and

(e) to make, execute, acknowledge and deliver all such other Contracts, agreements, guarantees, orders, receipts, endorsements, notices, requests, instructions, certificates, stock powers, letters and other writings, and, in general, to do any and all things and to take any and all action that the Stockholder Representative, in its sole and absolute discretion, may consider necessary or proper or convenient in connection with or to carry out the transactions contemplated by this Agreement or any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement.

Indemnification. The Stockholder Representative shall be entitled to Section 10.2 reimbursement from the Company Securityholders of all of its out-of-pocket costs and expenses incurred as the Stockholder Representative. In connection with this Agreement and any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this agreement, and in exercising or failing to exercise all or any of the powers conferred on the Stockholder Representative under this Agreement, (a) the Stockholder Representative shall incur no responsibility or liability whatsoever to any Company Securityholder by reason of any error in judgment or other act or omission performed or omitted under this Agreement or any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement, solely except for responsibility or liability directly resulting from the Stockholder Representative's gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct,, and (b) the Stockholder Representative shall be entitled to rely on the advice of counsel, public accountants or other independent experts, in each case experienced in the matter at issue, and any error in judgment or other act or omission of the Stockholder Representative pursuant to such advice shall in no event subject the Stockholder Representative to Liability to any Company Securityholder. Each Company Securityholder shall indemnify, defend and hold harmless the Stockholder Representative from and against any and all losses, liabilities, damages, claims, penalties, fines, forfeitures, actions, fees, costs and expenses (including the fees and expenses of counsel and experts and their staffs and all expense of document location, duplication and shipment) (collectively, "Representative Losses") arising out of or in connection with the Stockholder Representative's execution and performance of this Agreement and any agreements ancillary hereto, in each case as such Representative Loss is suffered or incurred; provided, that in the event that any such Representative Loss is finally adjudicated to have been directly caused by the gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct of the Stockholder Representative, the Stockholder Representative will reimburse the Company Securityholders the amount of such indemnified Representative Loss to the extent attributable to such gross negligence, fraud or willful misconduct. If not paid directly to the Stockholder Representative by the Company Securityholders, any such Representative Losses may be recovered by the Stockholder Representative from (i) the funds in the Representative Expense Fund, (ii) the Indemnification Escrow Amount at such time as remaining amounts would otherwise be distributable to the Company Securityholders, and (iii) from any Earnout Payments at such time as any such amounts would otherwise be distributable to the Company Securityholders; provided, that while this section allows the Stockholder Representative to be paid from the aforementioned sources of funds, this does not relieve the Company Securityholders from their obligation to promptly pay such Representative Losses as they are suffered or incurred, nor does it prevent the Stockholder Representative from seeking any remedies available to it at law or otherwise. In no event will the

Stockholder Representative be required to advance its own funds on behalf of the Company Securityholders or otherwise. Notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, any restrictions or limitations on liability or indemnification obligations of the Company Securityholders set forth elsewhere in this Agreement are not intended to be applicable to the indemnities provided to the Stockholder Representative under this Section. The foregoing indemnities will survive the Closing, the resignation or removal of the Stockholder Representative or the termination of this Agreement.

Section 10.3 <u>Reliance</u>. Parent and its Representatives shall have the right to rely upon all actions taken or omitted to be taken by the Stockholder Representative pursuant to this Agreement or any other Contract, certificate or other document in connection with this Agreement and all such actions or omissions shall be legally binding on the Company Securityholders.

Section 10.4 Interest. The grant of authority to the Stockholder Representative under this Agreement (a) is coupled with an interest and shall be irrevocable and survive the death, incompetency, bankruptcy or liquidation of any Company Securityholder and (b) shall survive the consummation of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement. If the Stockholder Representative shall resign or be removed by the Company Securityholders, the Company Securityholders shall (by consent of those Company Stockholders entitled to at least a majority of the Merger Consideration), within 10 days after such resignation or removal, appoint a successor to the Stockholder Representative. Any such successor shall succeed the former Stockholder Representative as the Stockholder Representative hereunder.

Section 10.5 Representative Expense Fund. Upon the Closing, Parent will wire \$200,000 (the "Representative Expense Amount") to the Stockholder Representative to be held as an expense fund (the "Representative Expense Fund"), which will be used for the purposes of paying directly, or reimbursing the Stockholder Representative for, any third party expenses pursuant to this Agreement and any agreements ancillary hereto. The Company Securityholders will not receive any interest or earnings on the Representative Expense Fund and irrevocably transfer and assign to the Stockholder Representative any ownership right that they may otherwise have had in any such interest or earnings. The Stockholder Representative will not be liable for any loss of principal of the Representative Expense Fund other than as a result of its gross negligence or willful misconduct. The Stockholder Representative will hold these funds separate from its corporate funds, will not use these funds for its operating expenses or any other corporate purposes and will not voluntarily make these funds available to its creditors in the event of bankruptcy. As soon as practicable (but in any event within five (5) Business Days) following the completion of the Stockholder Representative's responsibilities (which shall be deemed to be the later date upon which (i) (a) the Revenue Payment (as defined in Exhibit D) is made or (b) all Outstanding Claims are resolved in accordance herewith) and (ii) a determination by the Stockholder Representative that such funds are no longer necessary to pay any anticipated Representative Losses in connection with the Revenue Payment or any Outstanding Claims, the Stockholder Representative will deliver any remaining balance of the Representative Expense Fund minus any reasonable expenses to Parent for further distribution to the Company Securityholders in accordance herewith. For tax purposes, the Representative Expense Fund will be treated as having been

received and voluntarily set aside by the Company Securityholders the time of Closing. The parties agree that the Stockholder Representative is not acting as a withholding agent or in any similar capacity in connection with the Representative Expense Fund.

## ARTICLE XI

## MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS

- Section 11.1 <u>Amendment</u>. This Agreement may be amended, supplemented or changed only by a written instrument signed by each of the Parties.
- Section 11.2 <u>Waiver</u>. No failure on the part of any Party to exercise any power, right, privilege or remedy under this Agreement, and no delay on the part of any Party in exercising any power, right, privilege or remedy under this Agreement, shall operate as a waiver of such power, right, privilege or remedy, and no single or partial exercise of any such power, right, privilege or remedy shall preclude any other or further exercise thereof or of any other power, right, privilege or remedy. No Party shall be deemed to have waived any Claim arising out of this Agreement, or any power, right, privilege or remedy under this Agreement, unless the waiver of such Claim, power, right, privilege or remedy is expressly set forth in a written instrument duly executed and delivered on behalf of such party, and any such waiver shall not be applicable or have any effect except in the specific instance in which it is given.
- Section 11.3 Entire Agreement; Counterparts. This Agreement and the Other Transaction Agreements constitute the entire agreement, and supersede all prior agreements and understandings, both written and oral, among or between any of the Parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof. This Agreement may be executed in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which shall constitute one and the same instrument. Delivery of an executed counterpart of this Agreement by facsimile or other electronic transmission shall be effective as delivery of an original counterpart hereof.
- Applicable Law; Jurisdiction; WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL. This Section 11.4 Agreement, and all Claims and causes of action (whether in contract or in tort or otherwise, or whether at law (including at common law or by statute) or in equity) that may be based on, arise out of or relate to this Agreement or the negotiation, execution, performance or subject matter hereof, the Laws of the State of Delaware applicable to agreements made and to be performed solely therein, without giving effect to principles of conflicts of law. Except for Claims arising from or related to Exhibit D, which Claims (except as expressly provided in Exhibit D) shall be governed by the terms of Exhibit D, in any action among or between any of the Parties arising out of or relating to this Agreement, each Party (a) irrevocably and unconditionally consents and submits to the exclusive jurisdiction and venue of the Court of Chancery of the State of Delaware or, to the extent such court does not have subject matter jurisdiction, the Superior Court of the State of Delaware or the U.S. District Court for the District of Delaware, (b) agrees that all Claims in respect of such action or proceeding shall be heard and determined exclusively in accordance with clause (a) of this Section 11.4, (c) waives any objection to laying venue in any such action or proceeding in such courts, (d) waives any objection that any such court is an inconvenient forum or does not have jurisdiction over any Party and (e) agrees that service of process upon such Party in any such action shall be effective if such process is given as a notice

## in accordance with <u>Section 11.8</u>. EACH PARTY IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY AND ALL RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY IN ANY CLAIM ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THIS AGREEMENT OR THE TRANSACTIONS CONTEMPLATED BY THIS AGREEMENT.

## Section 11.5 <u>Remedies; Specific Performance</u>.

- (a) Except as otherwise provided herein and subject to the provisions of <u>Section 8.7(a)</u>, any and all remedies herein expressly conferred upon a party will be deemed cumulative with and not exclusive of any other remedy conferred by this Agreement, or by law or equity upon such party, and the exercise by a party of any one remedy will not preclude the exercise of any other remedy.
- (b) The Parties acknowledge and agree that irreparable damage would occur in the event that any of the provisions of this Agreement were not performed in accordance with their specific terms or were otherwise breached and that monetary damages, even if available, would not be an adequate remedy therefor. It is accordingly agreed that, at any time prior to the earlier of the Effective Time and the termination of this Agreement pursuant to Article VII, the Parties shall be entitled to seek non-monetary damages through an injunction or injunctions to prevent breaches of this Agreement and to enforce specifically the performance of terms and provisions of this Agreement, including the right of a Party to cause each other Party to consummate the Merger and the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement, in any court referred to in Section 11.4, without proof of actual damages (and each Party waives any requirement for the securing or posting of any bond in connection with such remedy), this being in addition to any other remedy to which they are entitled at law or in equity. In connection with the foregoing, the Parties further agree not to assert that a remedy of specific enforcement is unenforceable, invalid, contrary to Law or inequitable for any reason, nor to assert that a remedy of monetary damages would provide an adequate remedy for any such breach.
- Section 11.6 <u>Payment of Expenses</u>. Except as set forth in <u>Section 5.7(b)</u>, <u>Section 9.6</u>, and <u>Section 10.2</u>, whether or not the Merger is consummated, each Party shall pay its own expenses incident to preparing for, entering into and carrying out this Agreement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement.
- Section 11.7 <u>Assignability; Third-Party Rights.</u> Neither this Agreement nor any of the rights, interests or obligations under this Agreement may be assigned or delegated, in whole or in part, by operation of law or otherwise, by any Party without the prior written consent of the other Parties, and any such assignment without such prior written consent shall be null and void; <u>provided, however, that Parent and Merger Sub shall be permitted to assign or delegate their rights, interests and obligations under this Agreement to an Affiliate of Parent without the prior written consent of any other Party, but any such assignment shall not relieve the Parent of any obligations hereunder. This Agreement shall be binding upon, and shall be enforceable by and inure to the benefit of, the Parties and their respective successors and assigns. Nothing in this Agreement is intended to or shall confer upon any Person (other than the Parties) any right, benefit or remedy of any nature whatsoever; <u>provided, however, that, from and after the Effective Time, the Indemnified Parties shall be third-party beneficiaries of the provisions set forth in Section 5.7.</u></u>

Notices. All notices and other communications under this Agreement Section 11.8 shall be in writing and shall be deemed given (a) when delivered personally by hand (with written confirmation of receipt by other than automatic means, whether electronic or otherwise), (b) when sent by email (with written confirmation of transmission) or (c) one (1) Business Day following the day sent by an internationally recognized overnight courier (with written confirmation of receipt), in each case, at the following addresses and email addresses (or to such other address or email address as a Party may have specified by notice given to the other Parties pursuant to this provision):

if to Parent or Merger Sub:

Helmerich & Payne, Inc. 1437 S. Boulder Ave., Suite 1400 Tulsa, Oklahoma 74119-3623 Email: cara.hair@hpinc.com Attention: Cara Hair, Vice President, General Counsel and Chief Compliance Officer

with copies (which shall not constitute notice) to:

Skadden, Arps, Slate, Meagher & Flom LLP 1440 New York Avenue, N.W. Washington, DC 20005 Email: pankaj.sinha@skadden.com

Attention: Pankaj Sinha

if to the Company:

Motive Drilling Technologies, Inc. 1807 Ross Avenue, Suite 250 Dallas, TX 75201 Email: todd.benson@motivedrilling.com Attention: Todd Benson, Chief Executive Officer

with a copy (which shall not constitute notice) to:

Kastner Huggins Reddien Gravelle LLP 801 West 5th Street, Suite 105 Austin, TX 78703 Email:

ekastner@khrg.com Attention: Evan Kastner

if to the Stockholder Representative:

*If prior to July 31, 2017:* 

Shareholder Representative Services LLC

1614 15th Street, Suite 200 Denver, CO 80202 Attention: Managing Director

Email: deals@srsacquiom.com Facsimile No.: (303) 623-0294 Telephone No.: (303) 623-0294

*If on or after July 31, 2017:* 

Shareholder Representative Services LLC 950 17th Street, Suite 1400 Denver, CO 80202

Attention: Managing Director Email: deals@srsacquiom.com Facsimile No.: (303) 623-0294 Telephone No.: (303) 648-4085

Section 11.9 <u>Severability</u>. Any term or provision of this Agreement that is invalid or unenforceable in any situation in any jurisdiction shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remaining terms and provisions hereof or the validity or enforceability of the offending term or provision in any other situation or in any other jurisdiction.

Section 11.10 No Other Representations and Warranties. Except for the representations and warranties set forth in Article IV or in any certificate delivered pursuant to this Agreement and except with respect to fraud, the Company acknowledges and represents that neither Parent, Merger Sub nor any of their respective equity holders or Representatives, nor any other Person, has made or is making any other express or implied representation or warranty with respect to Parent or Merger Sub or their respective businesses or operations, including with respect to any information provided or made available to the Company. Except for the representations and warranties set forth in Article III or in any Other Transaction Agreement and except with respect to fraud, Parent and Merger Sub acknowledge and represent that neither the Company nor any of its equity holders or Representatives, nor any other Person, has made or is making any other express or implied representation or warranty with respect to the Company or its businesses or operations, including with respect to any information provided or made available to Parent or Merger Sub.

## Section 11.11 <u>Construction</u>.

- (a) <u>Definitions</u>. Each capitalized term used in this Agreement has the meaning given to it in <u>Exhibit A</u>.
- (b) <u>Time Periods</u>. When calculating the period of time before which, within which or following which any act is to be done or step taken pursuant to this Agreement, (i) the date that is the reference date in calculating such period shall be excluded and (ii) if the last day of such period is a not a Business Day, the period in question shall end on the next succeeding Business Day.

- (c) <u>Dollars</u>. Unless otherwise specifically indicated, any reference herein to "\$" means U.S. dollars.
- (d) <u>Gender and Number</u>. Any reference herein to gender shall include all genders, and words imparting the singular number only shall include the plural and vice versa.
- (e) Articles, Sections and Headings. When a reference is made herein to an Article or a Section, such reference shall be to an Article or a Section of this Agreement unless otherwise indicated. The table of contents and headings contained herein are for reference purposes only and shall not affect in any way the meaning or interpretation of this Agreement.
- (f) <u>Include</u>. Whenever the words "include," "includes" or "including" are used herein, they shall be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation."
- (g) <u>Hereof.</u> The words "hereof," "hereto," "hereby," "herein" and "hereunder" and words of similar import when used herein shall refer to this Agreement as a whole and not to any particular provision of this Agreement.
- (h) <u>Extent</u>. The word "extent" in the phrase "to the extent" means the degree to which a subject or other thing extends, and such phrase shall not mean simply "if."
- (i) <u>Contracts; Laws</u>. Any Contract or Law defined or referred to herein means such Contract or Law as from time to time amended, modified or supplemented, unless otherwise specifically indicated.
- (j) <u>Persons</u>. References to a person are also to its successors and permitted assigns.
- Exhibits and Disclosure Schedule. The Exhibits to this Agreement and the (k) Company Disclosure Schedule are incorporated and made a part hereof and are an integral part of this Agreement. Each of the Company and Parent may, at its option, include in the Company Disclosure Schedule, respectively, items that are not material in order to avoid any misunderstanding, and such inclusion, or any references to dollar amounts herein or in the Company Disclosure Schedule, shall not be deemed to be an acknowledgement or representation that such items are material, to establish any standard of materiality or to define further the meaning of such terms for purposes of this Agreement or otherwise. Nothing in the Company Disclosure Schedule is intended to broaden the scope of any representation or warranty contained in the Agreement or to create any covenant. The Company Disclosure Schedule is organized into sections that correspond to the Sections of this Agreement. Any item set forth in any section of the Company Disclosure Schedule that corresponds to a Section of this Agreement shall apply to and qualify only (i) such Section of this Agreement and (ii) any other Section of this Agreement that contains a representation or warranty if such item's relevance to such other Section is reasonably apparent on its face without further inquiry. Any capitalized term used in any Exhibit or any Disclosure Schedule but not otherwise defined therein shall have the meaning given to such term herein.
- (l) <u>Making Available</u>. A document or information shall be deemed to have been "made available" or otherwise delivered to Parent only if, prior to the execution and

delivery of this Agreement, such document or information has been posted to the "Project Spring" Merrill DataSite data room maintained by the Company in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement in a folder thereof to which Parent or its Representatives have downloading and printing access.

[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]

The Parties have caused this Agreement to be executed as of the date first written above.

## HELMERICH & PAYNE, INC.

By:	
	Name:
	Title:
SPRI By:	NG MERGER SUB, INC.
Бу.	Name:
	Title:
[Signature Page to Agreement a	nd Plan of Merger]

## MOTIVE DRILLING TECHNOLOGIES, INC.

By:	
•	Name:
	Title:
[Signature Page to Agreement a	nd Plan of Merger]

# SHAREHOLDER REPRESENTATIVE SERVICES LLC, solely in its capacity as Stockholder Representative

By:	
Name: Title:	
[Signature Page to Agreement and Plan of Merger]	

#### **EXHIBIT A**

## **DEFINITIONS**

Section 1 <u>Defined Terms</u>. As used in this Agreement, each of the following capitalized terms has the meaning specified in this <u>Section 1</u> of <u>Exhibit A</u>.

"Acquired Entity" means any of the Company or any of the Company's Subsidiaries.

"Affiliate" means, with respect to any Person, any other Person which directly or indirectly controls, is controlled by or is under common control with such Person. For purposes of the immediately preceding sentence, the term "control" (including, with correlative meanings, the terms "controlling," "controlled by" and "under common control with"), as used with respect to any Person, means the possession, directly or indirectly, of the power to direct or cause the direction of the management and policies of such Person, whether through ownership of voting securities, by contract or otherwise.

"Aggregate Exercise Price" means the sum of the aggregate exercise prices of the Company Options issued and outstanding as of immediately prior to the Effective Time.

"Base Amount" means the sum of \$75,000,000,  $\,$ plus an amount equal to the Aggregate Exercise Price.

"Business Day" means a day, other than a Saturday, a Sunday or other day on which commercial banks in New York, New York, Dallas, Texas or Tulsa, Oklahoma are authorized or required by Law to close.

"Claim" means any demand, claim, charge, action, suit, investigation, legal proceeding (whether at law or in equity), petition, complaint, notice of violation, arbitration or other litigation or similar proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative, arbitral or investigative.

"Code" means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 or any successor federal tax statute.

"Collective Bargaining Agreement" means any labor agreement, collective bargaining agreement or any other labor-related agreements or arrangements with any labor union, trade union or labor organization.

"Common Stock Closing Consideration" means (a) the Base Amount, minus (c) the Unpaid Company Expenses, minus (d) the Escrow Amount, minus (e) the Representative Expense Amount.

"Company Charter" means the Certificate of Incorporation of the Company, in effect on the date of this Agreement.

" $\underline{\text{Company Common Stock}}$ " means the common stock, par value \$0.0001 per share, of the Company.

" $\underline{\text{Company Disclosure Schedule}}\text{"means the disclosure schedule of the Company attached as }\underline{\text{Schedule A}}\text{.}$ 

"Company Equity Plan" means the Company's 2015 Equity Incentive Plan.

"Company Fundamental Representations" means the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 3.1, Section 3.2, Section 3.3, Section 3.4, Section 3.6(c), Section 3.18, Section 3.23 and Section 3.24.

"Company IP Representations" means the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 3.8.

"Company Optionholders" means the holders of Company Options.

"Company Options" means outstanding options to purchase shares of Company Common Stock from the Company, granted by the Company pursuant to the Company Equity Plan.

"Company Preferred Stock" means the Series A Preferred Stock and the Series A-1 Preferred Stock.

"Company Securityholders" means the Company Optionholders and Company Stockholders.

"Company Stockholder Liability Percentage" means, with respect to any Company Stockholder, a fraction, expressed as a percentage, the numerator of which is the number of shares of Company Common Stock held by such Company Stockholder as of immediately prior to the Effective Time, and the denominator of which is the number of shares of Company Common Stock issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time (other than Company Common Stock subject to cancellation and retirement under Section 2.1(a) or Section 2.1(b)).

"Company Stockholders" means the holders of Company Common Stock and the holders of the Company Preferred Stock; provided that Company Stockholders does not include Parent.

"Company Tax Representations" means the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 3.13.

"Confidentiality Agreement" means that certain letter agreement, dated December 20, 2016 between Helmerich & Payne, IDC and the Company.

"Contract" means any written or oral agreement, deed, mortgage, lease, license, instrument, note, commitment, undertaking, arrangement or contract.

"<u>Deal-Related Tax Deductions</u>" means (a) any compensatory payments, such as severance, sale, retention, acceleration, change-of-control or similar bonuses, and option exercises and cash-outs (including pursuant to <u>Section 5.9</u>) made to service providers of any Acquired Entity in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement to the extent deductible under applicable Law, (b) any amounts described in the definition of Unpaid

Company Expenses to the extent deductible under applicable Law and (c) any capitalized financing costs and expenses of any Acquired Entity to the extent deductible under applicable Law as a result of the satisfaction of any related Indebtedness in connection with the Closing.

"Entity" means any corporation (including any nonprofit corporation), general partnership, limited partnership, limited liability partnership, joint venture, estate, trust, company (including any company limited by shares, limited liability company or joint stock company) or other association, organization or entity (including any Governmental Entity).

"Environmental Claim" means any Claim alleging Liability relating to or arising out of any Environmental Law or Environmental Permit, including those relating to an actual or alleged Release of, or human exposure to, any Hazardous Materials or violation of any Environmental Law or Environmental Permit.

"Environmental Laws" means all Laws relating to pollution or protection of the environment or human health and safety, including laws relating to releases or threatened releases of Hazardous Materials into the indoor or outdoor environment (including air, surface water, groundwater, land, surface and subsurface strata) or otherwise relating to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, release, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials and all Laws relating to endangered or threatened species of fish, wildlife and plants, and the management or use of natural resources.

"Environmental Permit" means any Permit required or issued pursuant to applicable Environmental Laws to the extent required for the conduct of the business or operations of any Acquired Entity.

"ERISA Affiliate" means any Person (whether or not incorporated) that, together with any Acquired Entity, is treated as a single employer under Section 414(b) or (c) of the Code.

"Escrow Agent" means Delaware Trust Company or any other Person that is agreed to in writing by the Company and Parent prior to the Closing.

"Escrow Agreement" means an escrow agreement, by and among Parent, the Stockholder Representative and the Escrow Agent, substantially in the form attached as Exhibit E with such changes as reasonably requested by the Escrow Agent.

"Escrow Amount" means the Initial Indemnification Escrow Amount.

"Estimated Common Stock Closing Consideration" means (a) the Base Amount, minus (b the Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses, minus (c) the Escrow Amount, minus (d) the Representative Expense Amount.

"Exchange Act" means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.

"<u>Fundamental Representations</u>" means the Company Fundamental Representations and the Parent Fundamental Representations.

"GAAP" means U.S. generally accepted accounting principles in effect at the time of application of the term.

"Governmental Entity" means any government, court, regulatory or administrative agency, commission or authority or other governmental instrumentality, federal, state or local, domestic, foreign or multinational, including any contractor acting on behalf of such agency, commission, authority or governmental instrumentality.

"Hazardous Materials" means (a) any petrochemical or petroleum products, radioactive materials, asbestos in any form that is or could become friable, urea formaldehyde foam insulation, transformers or other equipment that contain dielectric fluid containing polychlorinated biphenyls and radon gas, (b) any chemicals, materials or substances defined as or included in the definition of "hazardous substances," "hazardous wastes," "hazardous materials," "restricted hazardous materials," "extremely hazardous substances," "toxic substances," "contaminants" or "pollutants" or words of similar meaning and regulatory effect or (c) any other chemical, material or substance, exposure to which is prohibited, limited, or regulated by any applicable Environmental Law or which may result in Liability arising from injury to persons, property or resources.

"HSR Act" means the Hart-Scott-Rodino Antitrust Improvements Act of 1976.

"<u>Identified Company Stockholders</u>" means Formation8 Partners Fund II, L.P., Formation8 Partners Entrepreneurs Fund II, L.P., GE Ventures Limited and Hunt Energy Enterprises, L.L.C.

"Indebtedness" means, with respect to any Person, (a) the aggregate indebtedness for borrowed money, including any accrued interest, fees and cost or penalty associated with prepaying such indebtedness and any such obligations evidenced by bonds, debentures, notes or similar obligations, (b) obligations under any deferred purchase price arrangements, (c) capitalized lease obligations that are classified as a balance sheet liability in accordance with GAAP, (d) obligations under any sale and leaseback transaction, synthetic lease or tax ownership operating lease transaction (whether or not recorded on the balance sheet), (e) obligations with respect to hedging, swaps or similar arrangements, (f) obligations with respect to the face amount of all letters of credit, bankers' acceptances and similar obligations issued for the account of such Person, (g) any securities or other equity instruments that under the body of accounting principles applicable to such Person are characterized as debt, (h) all guarantee obligations of such Person in respect of obligations of the kind referred to in clauses (a) through (h) above secured by (or for which the holder of such obligation has an existing right, contingent or otherwise, to be secured by) any security interest on property (including accounts and contract rights) of such Person, whether or not such Person has assumed or become liable for the payment of such obligation, in each case, owed by such Person.

"Indemnification Escrow Account" means the escrow account established pursuant to the Escrow Agreement in respect of the Indemnification Escrow Amount.

"Indemnification Escrow Amount" means the sum of (a) the Initial Indemnification Escrow Amount, plus (b) any "Additional Indemnification Escrow Amount," as defined in the Escrow Agreement.

"Initial Indemnification Escrow Amount" means \$9,380,000.

"IP Rights" means any and all proprietary, industrial and intellectual property rights, under the law of any jurisdiction or rights under international treaties, both statutory and common law rights, including: (a) utility models, patents and patent applications, and extensions, divisions, continuations, continuations-in-part, reexaminations, and reissues thereof; (b) trademarks and service marks (whether registered or unregistered), trade names, slogans, domain names, logos, trade dress and other identifiers of source, and registrations and applications for registration thereof; (c) copyrights (whether registered or unregistered), moral rights, database rights, other rights in works of authorship and registrations and applications for registration thereof; and (d) trade secrets, know-how, and rights in confidential information.

"IRS" means the U.S. Internal Revenue Service or any successor agency.

"Knowledge" means (a) with respect to the Company, the actual knowledge that any of the Company Management Members have or would reasonably be expected to have following a reasonable inquiry of the type that would reasonably be expected to be made by such individuals in the prudent exercise of such individuals' job functions and/or duties, and (b) with respect to Parent, the actual knowledge that any of the executive officers of Parent have or would reasonably be expected to have following reasonable inquiry of the type that would reasonably be expected to be made by such individuals in the prudent exercise of such individuals' job functions and/or duties.

"<u>Laws</u>" means any laws (statutory, common or otherwise), constitutions, treaties, conventions, ordinances, codes, rules, regulations, Orders or other similar requirements enacted, adopted, promulgated or applied by a Governmental Entity.

"<u>Liabilities</u>" means assessments, Claims of any kind or nature, commitments, damages, deficiencies, demands, fines, interest, liabilities (including any Indebtedness), obligations, penalties and Taxes, in each case, whether accrued, absolute, contingent or otherwise, known or unknown, or due.

"Lien" means with respect to any property or asset, including any equity interest, any lien, security interest, deed of trust, mortgage, pledge, encumbrance, restriction on transfer, proxies, voting trusts or agreements, hypothecation, assignment, claim, right of way, defect in title, encroachment, easement, restrictive covenant, charge, deposit arrangement or preference, priority or other security agreement or preferential arrangement of any kind or nature whatsoever including any conditional sale or other title retention agreement, the interest of a lessor under a capital lease and any financing lease having substantially the same economic effect as any of the foregoing, and the filing of any financing statement under the UCC or comparable Law of any jurisdiction naming the owner of the property or asset to which such lien relates as debtor, or any restriction on the creation of any of the foregoing.

"Losses" means Liabilities, losses, Orders and costs and expenses (including reasonable fees and expenses of attorneys, auditors, consultants and other agents); <u>provided</u>, <u>however</u>, that Losses shall not include punitive damages or exemplary damages except for punitive damages or exemplary damages paid to a Third Party.

"Material Adverse Effect" means any event, change, circumstance, development, occurrence, condition, effect or state of facts that is or would reasonably be expected to be, individually or in the aggregate, materially adverse to the business, assets (including any IP Rights of any Acquired Entity or any technology of any Acquired Entity), condition (financial or otherwise) or results of operations of the Acquired Entities, taken as a whole; provided, however, that no events, changes, circumstances, developments, occurrences, conditions, effects and states of facts resulting from the following shall constitute, or be taken into account in determining, a Material Adverse Effect: (a) the announcement, pendency or anticipated consummation of the Merger or any of the other transactions contemplated by this Agreement; (b) changes in general economic conditions or the credit, financial or capital markets; (c) changes in general conditions in any industry in which any Acquired Entity operates or participates; (d) any natural or man-made disaster, pandemic, act of terrorism, sabotage, military action or war, or any escalation or worsening thereof; (e) changes in general legal, regulatory or political conditions after the date of this Agreement; and (f) changes in GAAP or applicable Laws or the interpretation thereof after the date of this Agreement.

"Merger Consideration" means the total amount paid to Company Securityholders pursuant to Section 2.1(c) and Section 5.9.

"No Scrape Representations" means the representations and warranties of the Company in the last sentence of Section 3.6(a), Section 3.7(b), the first sentence of Section 3.8(k), the first sentence of Section 3.11(b), the first sentence of Section 3.14(a), the first sentence of Section 3.22, and the last sentence of Section 3.24.

"Order" means any judgment, decree, injunction, rule, order, decision, ruling or assessment of any arbitrator or Governmental Entity.

"Organizational Documents" means any corporate, partnership or limited liability organizational documents, including certificates or articles of incorporation, bylaws, certificates of formation, operating agreements (including limited liability company agreement and agreements of limited partnership), certificates of limited partnership, partnership agreements, shareholder agreements and certificates of existence, as applicable.

"Other Transaction Agreements" means the Confidentiality Agreement, the Escrow Agreement, the Merger Support Agreement and any other Contract entered into in connection with this Agreement or any document or certificate delivered by a Party in connection with this Agreement or any of the foregoing.

"<u>Parent Fundamental Representations</u>" means the representations and warranties of Parent and Merger Sub in <u>Section 4.1</u>, <u>Section 4.2</u> and <u>Section 4.7</u>.

"<u>Per-Share Portion</u>" means a fraction, (a) the numerator of which is one (1) and (b) the denominator of which is equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Company Common

Stock issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time (other than Company Common Stock subject to cancellation and retirement under Section 2.1(a) or Section 2.1(b)), plus (ii) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of all Company Options that are outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time.

"<u>Permit</u>" means any permit, license, registration, certificate, franchise, qualification, waiver, authorization or similar rights issued, granted or obtained by or from any Governmental Entity.

"Permitted Liens" means (a) statutory Liens for current Taxes, assessments or other governmental charges not yet due and payable, or the amount or validity of which is being contested in good faith by appropriate proceedings and, for which adequate reserves have been established in accordance with GAAP, (b) Liens or imperfections of title that have arisen in the ordinary course of business, (c) Liens or imperfections of title relating to Liabilities reflected in the financial statements (including any related notes) contained in the Company SEC Documents publicly filed prior to the date of this Agreement, (d) with respect to the Real Property, (i) Liens in favor of landlords and prime landlords as set forth in the Real Estate Leases and (ii) zoning, building, or other restrictions, variances, covenants, restrictive covenants, declarations, rights of way, encumbrances, encroachments, easements and minor irregularities or defects in title, none of which, individually or in the aggregate, (1) interfere in any material respect with the present use of or occupancy of the affected Real Property by the Company, (2) have more than an immaterial effect on the value or use of such Real Property or (3) would impair the ability to transfer the Real Property, and (e) non-exclusive licenses granted in the ordinary course of the business.

"Person" means any individual or Entity.

"<u>Post-Closing Tax Period</u>" means any taxable period beginning after the Closing Date and the portion of any Straddle Period after the Closing Date.

"Pre-Closing Tax Period" means any taxable period ending on or before the Closing Date and the portion of any Straddle Period up to and including the Closing Date.

"Pre-Closing Tax Obligation" means (a) all Taxes required to be paid by or with respect to the Company or any of its Subsidiaries attributable to any Pre-Closing Tax Period (such Taxes for a Straddle Period to be apportioned in accordance with Section 9.2), (b) all Taxes required to be paid as a result of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries having been a member of any U.S. federal "affiliated group" (as defined in Section 1504 of the Code) or state, local or foreign combined, unitary or analogous group, in each case, on or prior to the Closing Date, including pursuant to Treasury Regulations Section 1.1502-6 or any comparable, similar or analogous provision of state, local or foreign law, (c) all Taxes required to be paid by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries as a transferee or successor pursuant to applicable Law, in either case where the liability of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is attributable to an event or transaction occurring before the Closing, including a merger or reorganization involving the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, (d) all amounts required to be paid by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries is a party or is otherwise subject on or prior to the Closing Date, (e) except as

otherwise provided by this Agreement, all Taxes of the Company Securityholders or any of their respective Affiliates, (f) all Transfer Taxes for which the Company Securityholders are responsible pursuant to Section 9.6, (g) all Taxes required to be withheld in connection with any payment to or for the benefit of the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any Company Securityholder pursuant to this Agreement, to the extent not withheld pursuant to Section 2.6, except interest, penalties and additions to Tax and Losses other than Taxes as a result of the gross negligence or willful misconduct of any withholding agent, which is or is an agent of Parent or any of its Affiliates (including the Company and its Subsidiaries), with respect to any such payment, (h) all Losses related to any breach of any of the Company Securityholders', or the Stockholder Representative's, obligations pursuant to Article IX, and (i) all Losses related to the foregoing; provided, however, that, notwithstanding anything in this Agreement to the contrary, Pre-Closing Tax Obligations shall not include any Transaction Payroll Taxes, any Tax consequences resulting solely from any election with respect to any Acquired Company under Section 338 of the Code or any Tax consequences of any transactions or events occurring on the Closing Date after the Closing other than in the ordinary course of business.

"Pro Rata Share" means, with respect to any Company Securityholder, a fraction, expressed as a percentage, the numerator of which is a number equal to the sum of (a) the number of shares of Company Common Stock held by such Company Securityholder as of immediately prior to the Effective Time (assuming full conversion all Preferred Stock to Common Stock), plus (b) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of all Company Options (as if fully vested) held by such Company Securityholder as of immediately prior to the Effective Time, and the denominator of which is a number equal to the sum of (i) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issued and outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time (other than Company Common Stock subject to cancellation and retirement under Section 2.1(a) or Section 2.1(b)), plus (ii) the number of shares of Company Common Stock issuable upon the exercise of all Company Options (as if fully vested) that are outstanding immediately prior to the Effective Time.

"Release" means any release, spill, emission, leaking, pumping, emitting, depositing, discharging, injecting, escaping, leaching, dispersing, dumping, pouring, disposing or migrating into, onto or through the environment (including air, surface water, ground water, land surface or subsurface strata).

"Representatives" means, with respect to any Person, such Person's officers, directors, employees, consultants, agents, financial advisors, attorneys, accountants, other advisors, Affiliates and other representatives.

"SEC" means the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission.

"Securities Act" means the Securities Act of 1933.

"Series A Preferred Stock" means the preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, of the Company designated by the Company Charter as "Series A Preferred Stock."

"Series A-1 Preferred Stock" means the preferred stock, par value \$0.0001, of the Company designated by the Company Charter as "Series A-1 Preferred Stock."

"Straddle Period" means any taxable period beginning on or prior to and ending after the Closing Date.

"Subsidiary" of any Person means any Entity (a) of which 50% or more of the outstanding share capital, voting securities or other voting equity interests are owned, directly or indirectly, by such Person, (b) of which such Person is entitled to elect, directly or indirectly, at least 50% of the board of directors or similar governing body of such Entity or (c) if such Entity is a limited partnership or limited liability company, of which such Person or one of its Subsidiaries is a general partner or managing member or has the power to direct the policies, management or affairs.

"<u>Tax Attribute</u>" means any net operating losses, net capital losses, research and development, research and experimentation, investment, foreign or other Tax credits, basis and similar Tax assets and attributes.

"Tax Return" means any report, return, statement, notice, notification, form, election, certificate, document, declaration or other information or filing supplied or required to be supplied to any Taxing Authority with respect to Taxes, including any schedule or attachment thereto and any amendment thereof, any information returns, any documents with respect to or accompanying payments of estimated Taxes, or with respect to or accompanying requests for the extension of time in which to file any such report, return, statement, notice, notification, form, election, certificate, document, declaration or other information or filing.

"<u>Tax Sharing Agreement</u>" means, with respect to any Person, any Tax allocation, indemnity or sharing agreement or similar agreement, arrangement or understanding to which such Person is a party or is otherwise subject; <u>provided</u>, <u>however</u>, that a Tax Sharing Agreement with respect to any Person does not include contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business of such Person the primary purpose of which is not Taxes, and does not include this Agreement or any Tax Sharing Agreement solely between the Acquired Entities.

"Taxes" means (a) all federal, state, local, foreign or other taxes of any kind (together with any and all interest, penalties, additions to tax and additional amounts imposed with respect thereto) imposed, assessed, or collected by or under the authority of any Taxing Authority, including taxes, levies, assessments, tariffs, duties, or other charges on or with respect to income, franchises, windfall or other profits, gross receipts, property, capital gains, sales, use, capital stock, payroll, employment, social security, workers' compensation, unemployment compensation, or net worth and taxes or other charges in the nature of an excise tax, withholding tax, ad valorem tax, business tax, transfer tax, stamp tax, estimated tax, surtax or value added tax and (b) any liability for amounts described in clause (a) of another person under Treasury Regulation Section 1.1502-6 (or any similar provision of Law), as a result of transferee liability, by Law, or by Contract.

"<u>Taxing Authority</u>" means the IRS or any other Governmental Entity that has power to impose, assess, determine, administer or collect any Taxes.

"<u>Transaction Payroll Taxes</u>" shall mean the employer portion of any payroll or employment Taxes incurred in connection with any compensatory payments, such as severance,

sale, retention, acceleration, change-of-control and similar bonuses, and option exercises and cash-outs (including pursuant to <u>Section 5.9</u>) made to service providers of any Acquired Entity in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, whether payable by Parent, any Acquired Entity or any of their Affiliates.

"Transfer Tax" means all transfer and similar Taxes imposed in respect of the Merger, including documentary, recording, registration, stamp duty, transfer, real estate transfer, sales and use, value added and similar Taxes and fees in all jurisdictions whenever and wherever imposed and, for the avoidance of doubt, shall include all such Taxes payable in relation to any deemed or indirect transfer of assets or property as a result of the Merger and all penalties, surcharges, charges, interest and additions thereto but "Transfer Tax" shall not include any charge to capital gains or income, franchise or similar Taxes.

"Treasury Regulations" means the regulations issued under the Code, as such regulations may be amended from time to time.

"Unpaid Company Expenses" means (a) all fees, costs and expenses incurred by the Company in connection with the process of selling the Company to Parent or otherwise relating to the negotiation, preparation or execution of this Agreement or any Contract or other document in connection with this Agreement or the performance or consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby or thereby (and any other Contracts, documents or transactions that were considered or negotiated as an alternative to this Agreement and the transactions contemplated by this Agreement), including (i) the fees and expenses payable by the Company to Kastner Huggins Reddien Gravelle LLP in connection therewith, (ii) the fees and expenses payable by the Company to Wilson Sonsini Goodrich & Rosati LLP in connection therewith and (iii) the fees and expenses payable by the Company to outside accountants or other advisors in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, in each case under this clause (a), solely to the extent not paid prior to the Effective Time, whether or not invoiced, in all cases excluding the 50% of the "tail" policy and Transfer Taxes to be borne by Parent and (b) all sale, change of control, "stayaround," retention, severance, or similar bonuses, compensation or payments (including all payments relating to stock appreciation rights of the Company) to current or former directors, employees and other service providers of the Company that are to be paid or are payable at or as a result of or in connection with the transactions contemplated by this Agreement, including all Transaction Payroll Taxes.

"WARN Act" means the U.S. Worker Adjustment and Retraining Notification Act and any similar state or local Law.

Section 2 Other Defined Terms. In addition to the defined terms set forth in Section 1 of Exhibit A, as used in this Agreement, each of the following capitalized terms has the meaning specified in the Section set forth opposite such term below.

Affiliate Contracts

Aggregate Common Stock Closing Amount

Aggregate Company Option Closing Amount

Agreement

Book-Entry Shares

Section 3.10(a)(xv)

Section 2.1(c)(i)

Section 5.9(c)(i)

Preamble

Section 2.4(a)(i)

Cap AmountSection 8.3(Certificate of MergerSection 1.3(Claim DateSection 8.4(Claim NoticeSection 8.4(ClosingSection 1.3(Closing DateSection 1.3(CompanyPreamb
Claim DateSection 8.4(Claim NoticeSection 8.4(ClosingSection 1.3(Closing DateSection 1.3(
Claim Notice Section 8.4( Closing Closing Date Section 1.3( Section 1.3(
Closing Date Section 1.3( Closing Date
Closing Date Section 1.3(
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
Company
Company Board Resolutions Section 3
Company Management Members Recita
Company Option Merger Consideration Section 5.9(
Company Optionholder Surrender Form Section 5.9(
Company Plans Section 3.34
Company Securities Section 3.14(
Company Stock Certificates Section 2.4(a)
Company Written Consent Section 5.10(
Consent Section 3.5(
Continuing Employees Section 5.5(
Customer Section 3.1
Customer Contract Section 3.10(a)(x
Deductible Amount Section 8.3(
DGCL Section 1
Dissenting Shares Section 2
Earnout Payments Section 5.11(
Effective Time Section 1.3(
End Date Section 7.1(b)
ERISA Section 3.14(
Estimated Unpaid Company Expenses Section 2.3(a)
Filing Section 3.5(
Financial Statements Section 3.6(
First Release Date Section 8.7(c)
First Release Outstanding Claims Section 8.7(c)
General Termination Date Section 8
Indemnified Party Section 5.7(
Indemnified Person Section 8.4(
Indemnifying Party Section 8.4(
Labor Disputes Section 3.15(
Latest Balance Sheet Section 3.6(
Leased Real Property Section 3.90
Legal Restraint Section 6.1(
Letter of Transmittal Section 2.4(a)
Management Offer Letters Recita
Material Contract Section 3.10(
Merger Section 1
Merger Sub Preamb
Merger Support Agreement Recita

**MEWA** Section 3.14(i) Multiemployer Plan Section 3.14(i) Section 8.4(a) Objection Notice **Outstanding Claims** Section 8.7(c)(ii) Parent Preamble Parent Plans Section 5.5(b) Parties Preamble Payment Statement Section 2.3(a) Real Estate Leases Section 3.9(c) Real Property Section 3.9(c) Representative Expense Amount Section 10.5 Representative Expense Fund Section 10.5 Required Contractual Consents Section 6.2(d) Specified Indemnification Obligations Section 8.7(b) Stockholder Representative Preamble Supplier Section 3.19 **Surrender Instructions** Section 2.4(a)(i) **Surviving Corporation** Section 1.1 Tax Claim Section 9.4(a) Third Party Section 8.4(a) Third-Party Claim Section 8.4(b) Title IV Plan Section 3.14(i)

#### CERTIFICATION

I, John W. Lindsay, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this report on Form 10-Q of Helmerich & Payne, Inc.;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- 5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: August 4, 2017

/S/ JOHN W. LINDSAY John W. Lindsay, Chief Executive Officer

## CERTIFICATION

I, Juan Pablo Tardio, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this report on Form 10-Q of Helmerich & Payne, Inc.;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- 5. The registrant's other certifying officer(s) and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: August 4, 2017

/S/ JUAN PABLO TARDIO

Juan Pablo Tardio, Chief Financial Officer

#### Certification of CEO and CFO Pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, As Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002

In connection with the Quarterly Report of Helmerich & Payne, Inc. (the "Company") on Form 10-Q for the period ended June 30, 2017, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), John W. Lindsay, as Chief Executive Officer of the Company, and Juan Pablo Tardio, as Chief Financial Officer of the Company, each hereby certifies, pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, to the best of his knowledge, that:

- $(1) \qquad \text{The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934;} \\$
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and result of operations of the Company.

/S/ JOHN W. LINDSAY John W. Lindsay Chief Executive Officer August 4, 2017 /S/ JUAN PABLO TARDIO Juan Pablo Tardio Chief Financial Officer August 4, 2017